The Linux Kernel API

The Linux Kernel API

This documentation is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

For more details see the file COPYING in the source distribution of Linux.

Table of Contents

1. Data Types 1
    Doubly Linked Lists 1
2. Basic C Library Functions 44
    String Conversions 44
    String Manipulation 66
    Bit Operations 101
3. Basic Kernel Library Functions 119
    Bitmap Operations 119
    Command-line Parsing 140
    CRC Functions 143
    idr/ida Functions 148
4. Memory Management in Linux 165
    The Slab Cache 165
    User Space Memory Access 183
    More Memory Management Functions 190
5. Kernel IPC facilities 288
    IPC utilities 288
6. FIFO Buffer 312
    kfifo interface 312
7. relay interface support 346
    relay interface 346
8. Module Support 373
    Module Loading 373
    Inter Module support 377
9. Hardware Interfaces 378
    Interrupt Handling 378
    DMA Channels 397
    Resources Management 399
    MTRR Handling 417
    PCI Support Library 418
    PCI Hotplug Support Library 562
10. Firmware Interfaces 566
    DMI Interfaces 566
    EDD Interfaces 574
11. Security Framework 580
    security_init 581
    security_module_enable 582
    securityfs_create_file 583
    securityfs_create_dir 584
    securityfs_remove 585
12. Audit Interfaces 586
    audit_log_start 587
    audit_log_format 588
    audit_log_end 589
    audit_log 590
    audit_log_secctx 591
    audit_alloc 592
    __audit_free 593
    __audit_syscall_entry 594
    __audit_syscall_exit 595
    __audit_reusename 596

__audit_getname 597
__audit_inode 598
auditsc_get_stamp 599
audit_set_loginuid 600
__audit_mq_open 601
__audit_mq_sendrecv 602
__audit_mq_notify 603
__audit_mq_getsetattr 604
__audit_ipc_obj 605
__audit_ipc_set_perm 606
__audit_socketcall 607
__audit_fd_pair 608
__audit_sockaddr 609
__audit_signal_info 610
__audit_log_bprm_fcaps 611
__audit_log_capset 612
audit_core_dumps 613
audit_rule_change 614
audit_list_rules_send 615
parent_len 616
audit_compare_dname_path 617
13. Accounting Framework 618
sys_acct 619
acct_collect 620
acct_process 621
14. Block Devices 622
blk_delay_queue 623
blk_start_queue_async 624
blk_start_queue 625
blk_stop_queue 626
blk_sync_queue 627
__blk_run_queue_uncond 628
__blk_run_queue 629
blk_run_queue_async 630
blk_run_queue 631
blk_queue_bypass_start 632
blk_queue_bypass_end 633
blk_cleanup_queue 634
blk_init_queue 635
blk_rq_set_block_pc 636
blk_requeue_request 637
part_round_stats 638
generic_make_request 639
submit_bio 640
blk_insert_cloned_request 641
blk_rq_err_bytes 642
blk_peek_request 643
blk_start_request 644
blk_fetch_request 645
blk_update_request 646
blk_unprep_request 647
blk_end_request 648
blk_end_request_all 649
blk_end_request_cur 650

blk_end_request_err 651
__blk_end_request 652
__blk_end_request_all 653
__blk_end_request_cur 654
__blk_end_request_err 655
rq_flush_dcache_pages 656
blk_lld_busy 657
blk_rq_unprep_clone 658
blk_rq_prep_clone 659
blk_start_plug 660
blk_pm_runtime_init 661
blk_pre_runtime_suspend 662
blk_post_runtime_suspend 663
blk_pre_runtime_resume 664
blk_post_runtime_resume 665
blk_set_runtime_active 666
__blk_drain_queue 667
rq_ioc 668
__get_request 669
get_request 670
blk_attempt_plug_merge 671
blk_cloned_rq_check_limits 672
blk_end_bidi_request 673
__blk_end_bidi_request 674
blk_rq_map_user_iov 675
blk_rq_unmap_user 676
blk_rq_map_kern 677
blk_release_queue 678
blk_queue_prep_rq 679
blk_queue_unprep_rq 680
blk_set_default_limits 681
blk_set_stacking_limits 682
blk_queue_make_request 683
blk_queue_bounce_limit 684
blk_queue_max_hw_sectors 685
blk_queue_chunk_sectors 686
blk_queue_max_discard_sectors 687
blk_queue_max_write_same_sectors 688
blk_queue_max_write_zeroes_sectors 689
blk_queue_max_segments 690
blk_queue_max_segment_size 691
blk_queue_logical_block_size 692
blk_queue_physical_block_size 693
blk_queue_alignment_offset 694
blk_limits_io_min 695
blk_queue_io_min 696
blk_limits_io_opt 697
blk_queue_io_opt 698
blk_queue_stack_limits 699
blk_stack_limits 700
bdev_stack_limits 701
disk_stack_limits 702
blk_queue_dma_pad 703
blk_queue_update_dma_pad 704

blk_queue_dma_drain 705
blk_queue_segment_boundary 706
blk_queue_virt_boundary 707
blk_queue_dma_alignment 708
blk_queue_update_dma_alignment 709
blk_set_queue_depth 710
blk_queue_write_cache 711
blk_execute_rq_nowait 712
blk_execute_rq 713
blkdev_issue_flush 714
blkdev_issue_discard 715
blkdev_issue_write_same 716
__blkdev_issue_zeroout 717
blkdev_issue_zeroout 718
blk_queue_find_tag 719
blk_free_tags 720
blk_queue_free_tags 721
blk_init_tags 722
blk_queue_init_tags 723
blk_queue_resize_tags 724
blk_queue_end_tag 725
blk_queue_start_tag 726
blk_queue_invalidate_tags 727
__blk_queue_free_tags 728
blk_rq_count_integrity_sg 729
blk_rq_map_integrity_sg 730
blk_integrity_compare 731
blk_integrity_register 732
blk_integrity_unregister 733
blk_trace_ioctl 734
blk_trace_shutdown 735
blk_add_trace_rq 736
blk_add_trace_bio 737
blk_add_trace_bio_remap 738
blk_add_trace_rq_remap 739
blk_mangle_minor 740
blk_alloc_devt 741
blk_free_devt 742
disk_replace_part_tbl 743
disk_expand_part_tbl 744
disk_block_events 745
disk_unblock_events 746
disk_flush_events 747
disk_clear_events 748
disk_get_part 749
disk_part_iter_init 750
disk_part_iter_next 751
disk_part_iter_exit 752
disk_map_sector_rcu 753
register_blkdev 754
device_add_disk 755
get_gendisk 756
bdget_disk 757
15. Char devices 758

register_chrdev_region 759
alloc_chrdev_region 760
__register_chrdev 761
unregister_chrdev_region 762
__unregister_chrdev 763
cdev_add 764
cdev_del 765
cdev_alloc 766
cdev_init 767
16. Miscellaneous Devices 768
misc_register 769
misc_deregister 770
17. Clock Framework 771
struct clk_notifier 772
struct clk_notifier_data 773
clk_notifier_register 774
clk_notifier_unregister 775
clk_get_accuracy 776
clk_set_phase 777
clk_get_phase 778
clk_is_match 779
clk_prepare 780
clk_unprepare 781
clk_get 782
devm_clk_get 783
clk_enable 784
clk_disable 785
clk_get_rate 786
clk_put 787
devm_clk_put 788
clk_round_rate 789
clk_set_rate 790
clk_has_parent 791
clk_set_rate_range 792
clk_set_min_rate 793
clk_set_max_rate 794
clk_set_parent 795
clk_get_parent 796
clk_get_sys 797

Chapter 1. Data Types

Doubly Linked Lists

Name

list_add — add a new entry

Synopsis

```
void list_add (struct list_head * new, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

new new entry to be added

head list head to add it after

Description

Insert a new entry after the specified head. This is good for implementing stacks.

Name

list_add_tail — add a new entry

Synopsis

```
void list_add_tail (struct list_head * new, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

new new entry to be added

head list head to add it before

Description

Insert a new entry before the specified head. This is useful for implementing queues.

Name

__list_del_entry — deletes entry from list.

Synopsis

```
void __list_del_entry (struct list_head * entry);
```

Arguments

entry the element to delete from the list.

Note

`list_empty` on entry does not return true after this, the entry is in an undefined state.

Name

list_replace — replace old entry by new one

Synopsis

```
void list_replace (struct list_head * old, struct list_head * new);
```

Arguments

old the element to be replaced

new the new element to insert

Description

If *old* was empty, it will be overwritten.

Name

list_del_init — deletes entry from list and reinitialize it.

Synopsis

```
void list_del_init (struct list_head * entry);
```

Arguments

entry the element to delete from the list.

Name

list_move — delete from one list and add as another's head

Synopsis

```
void list_move (struct list_head * list, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

list the entry to move

head the head that will precede our entry

Name

list_move_tail — delete from one list and add as another's tail

Synopsis

```
void list_move_tail (struct list_head * list, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

list the entry to move

head the head that will follow our entry

Name

list_is_last — tests whether *list* is the last entry in list *head*

Synopsis

```
int list_is_last (const struct list_head * list, const struct list_head
* head);
```

Arguments

list the entry to test

head the head of the list

Name

list_empty — tests whether a list is empty

Synopsis

```
int list_empty (const struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

head the list to test.

Name

list_empty_careful — tests whether a list is empty and not being modified

Synopsis

```
int list_empty_careful (const struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

head the list to test

Description

tests whether a list is empty _and_ checks that no other CPU might be in the process of modifying either member (next or prev)

NOTE

using `list_empty_careful` without synchronization can only be safe if the only activity that can happen to the list entry is `list_del_init`. Eg. it cannot be used if another CPU could re-`list_add` it.

Name

list_rotate_left — rotate the list to the left

Synopsis

```
void list_rotate_left (struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

head the head of the list

Name

list_is_singular — tests whether a list has just one entry.

Synopsis

```
int list_is_singular (const struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

head the list to test.

Name

list_cut_position — cut a list into two

Synopsis

```
void list_cut_position (struct list_head * list, struct list_head *
head, struct list_head * entry);
```

Arguments

list a new list to add all removed entries

head a list with entries

entry an entry within head, could be the head itself and if so we won't cut the list

Description

This helper moves the initial part of *head*, up to and including *entry*, from *head* to *list*. You should pass on *entry* an element you know is on *head*. *list* should be an empty list or a list you do not care about losing its data.

Name

list_splice — join two lists, this is designed for stacks

Synopsis

```
void list_splice (const struct list_head * list, struct list_head *
head);
```

Arguments

list the new list to add.

head the place to add it in the first list.

Name

list_splice_tail — join two lists, each list being a queue

Synopsis

```
void list_splice_tail (struct list_head * list, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

list the new list to add.

head the place to add it in the first list.

Name

list_splice_init — join two lists and reinitialise the emptied list.

Synopsis

```
void list_splice_init (struct list_head * list, struct list_head * head);
```

Arguments

list the new list to add.

head the place to add it in the first list.

Description

The list at *list* is reinitialised

Name

list_splice_tail_init — join two lists and reinitialise the emptied list

Synopsis

```
void list_splice_tail_init (struct list_head * list, struct list_head
* head);
```

Arguments

list the new list to add.

head the place to add it in the first list.

Description

Each of the lists is a queue. The list at *list* is reinitialised

Name

list_entry — get the struct for this entry

Synopsis

```
list_entry ( ptr, type, member);
```

Arguments

ptr	the struct list_head pointer.
type	the type of the struct this is embedded in.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_first_entry — get the first element from a list

Synopsis

```
list_first_entry ( ptr, type, member);
```

Arguments

ptr the list head to take the element from.

type the type of the struct this is embedded in.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Note, that list is expected to be not empty.

Name

list_last_entry — get the last element from a list

Synopsis

```
list_last_entry ( ptr, type, member);
```

Arguments

ptr the list head to take the element from.

type the type of the struct this is embedded in.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Note, that list is expected to be not empty.

Name

list_first_entry_or_null — get the first element from a list

Synopsis

```
list_first_entry_or_null ( ptr, type, member);
```

Arguments

ptr the list head to take the element from.

type the type of the struct this is embedded in.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Note that if the list is empty, it returns NULL.

Name

list_next_entry — get the next element in list

Synopsis

```
list_next_entry ( pos, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to cursor

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_prev_entry — get the prev element in list

Synopsis

```
list_prev_entry ( pos, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to cursor

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_for_each — iterate over a list

Synopsis

```
list_for_each ( pos, head);
```

Arguments

pos the struct list_head to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

Name

list_for_each_prev — iterate over a list backwards

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_prev ( pos, head);
```

Arguments

pos the struct list_head to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

Name

list_for_each_safe — iterate over a list safe against removal of list entry

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_safe ( pos, n, head);
```

Arguments

pos the struct list_head to use as a loop cursor.

n another struct list_head to use as temporary storage

head the head for your list.

Name

list_for_each_prev_safe — iterate over a list backwards safe against removal of list entry

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_prev_safe ( pos, n, head);
```

Arguments

pos the struct list_head to use as a loop cursor.

n another struct list_head to use as temporary storage

head the head for your list.

Name

list_for_each_entry — iterate over list of given type

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_for_each_entry_reverse — iterate backwards over list of given type.

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_reverse ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_prepare_entry — prepare a pos entry for use in `list_for_each_entry_continue`

Synopsis

```
list_prepare_entry ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a start point

head the head of the list

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Prepares a pos entry for use as a start point in `list_for_each_entry_continue`.

Name

list_for_each_entry_continue — continue iteration over list of given type

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_continue ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Continue to iterate over list of given type, continuing after the current position.

Name

list_for_each_entry_continue_reverse — iterate backwards from the given point

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_continue_reverse ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Start to iterate over list of given type backwards, continuing after the current position.

Name

list_for_each_entry_from — iterate over list of given type from the current point

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_from ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

member the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Iterate over list of given type, continuing from current position.

Name

list_for_each_entry_safe — iterate over list of given type safe against removal of list entry

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_safe ( pos, n, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
n	another type * to use as temporary storage
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Name

list_for_each_entry_safe_continue — continue list iteration safe against removal

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_safe_continue ( pos, n, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
n	another type * to use as temporary storage
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Iterate over list of given type, continuing after current point, safe against removal of list entry.

Name

list_for_each_entry_safe_from — iterate over list from current point safe against removal

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_safe_from ( pos, n, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
n	another type * to use as temporary storage
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Iterate over list of given type from current point, safe against removal of list entry.

Name

list_for_each_entry_safe_reverse — iterate backwards over list safe against removal

Synopsis

```
list_for_each_entry_safe_reverse ( pos, n, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
n	another type * to use as temporary storage
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

Iterate backwards over list of given type, safe against removal of list entry.

Name

list_safe_reset_next — reset a stale list_for_each_entry_safe loop

Synopsis

```
list_safe_reset_next ( pos, n, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the loop cursor used in the list_for_each_entry_safe loop
n	temporary storage used in list_for_each_entry_safe
member	the name of the list_head within the struct.

Description

list_safe_reset_next is not safe to use in general if the list may be modified concurrently (eg. the lock is dropped in the loop body). An exception to this is if the cursor element (pos) is pinned in the list, and list_safe_reset_next is called after re-taking the lock and before completing the current iteration of the loop body.

Name

hlist_for_each_entry — iterate over list of given type

Synopsis

```
hlist_for_each_entry ( pos, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

head the head for your list.

member the name of the hlist_node within the struct.

Name

hlist_for_each_entry_continue — iterate over a hlist continuing after current point

Synopsis

```
hlist_for_each_entry_continue ( pos, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

member the name of the hlist_node within the struct.

Name

hlist_for_each_entry_from — iterate over a hlist continuing from current point

Synopsis

```
hlist_for_each_entry_from ( pos, member);
```

Arguments

pos the type * to use as a loop cursor.

member the name of the hlist_node within the struct.

Name

hlist_for_each_entry_safe — iterate over list of given type safe against removal of list entry

Synopsis

```
hlist_for_each_entry_safe ( pos, n, head, member);
```

Arguments

pos	the type * to use as a loop cursor.
n	another struct hlist_node to use as temporary storage
head	the head for your list.
member	the name of the hlist_node within the struct.

Chapter 2. Basic C Library Functions

When writing drivers, you cannot in general use routines which are from the C Library. Some of the functions have been found generally useful and they are listed below. The behaviour of these functions may vary slightly from those defined by ANSI, and these deviations are noted in the text.

String Conversions

Name

simple_strtoull — convert a string to an unsigned long long

Synopsis

```
unsigned long long simple_strtoull (const char * cp, char ** endp,
unsigned int base);
```

Arguments

cp The start of the string

endp A pointer to the end of the parsed string will be placed here

base The number base to use

Description

This function is obsolete. Please use kstrtoull instead.

Name

simple_strtoul — convert a string to an unsigned long

Synopsis

```
unsigned long simple_strtoul (const char * cp, char ** endp, unsigned
int base);
```

Arguments

cp The start of the string

endp A pointer to the end of the parsed string will be placed here

base The number base to use

Description

This function is obsolete. Please use kstrtoul instead.

Name

simple_strtol — convert a string to a signed long

Synopsis

```
long simple_strtol (const char * cp, char ** endp, unsigned int base);
```

Arguments

cp The start of the string

endp A pointer to the end of the parsed string will be placed here

base The number base to use

Description

This function is obsolete. Please use kstrtol instead.

Name

simple_strtoll — convert a string to a signed long long

Synopsis

```
long long simple_strtoll (const char * cp, char ** endp, unsigned int
base);
```

Arguments

cp The start of the string

endp A pointer to the end of the parsed string will be placed here

base The number base to use

Description

This function is obsolete. Please use kstrtoll instead.

Name

vsnprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int vsnprintf (char * buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, va_list args);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

size The size of the buffer, including the trailing null space

fmt The format string to use

args Arguments for the format string

Description

This function generally follows C99 vsnprintf, but has some

extensions and a few limitations

`n` is unsupported `p*` is handled by `pointer`

See `pointer` or Documentation/printk-formats.txt for more extensive description.

** Please update the documentation in both places when making changes **

The return value is the number of characters which would be generated for the given input, excluding the trailing '\0', as per ISO C99. If you want to have the exact number of characters written into *buf* as return value (not including the trailing '\0'), use `vscnprintf`. If the return is greater than or equal to *size*, the resulting string is truncated.

If you're not already dealing with a va_list consider using `snprintf`.

Name

vscnprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int vscnprintf (char * buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, va_list args);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

size The size of the buffer, including the trailing null space

fmt The format string to use

args Arguments for the format string

Description

The return value is the number of characters which have been written into the *buf* not including the trailing '\0'. If *size* is == 0 the function returns 0.

If you're not already dealing with a va_list consider using `scnprintf`.

See the `vsnprintf` documentation for format string extensions over C99.

Name

snprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int snprintf (char * buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

size The size of the buffer, including the trailing null space

fmt The format string to use @...: Arguments for the format string

... variable arguments

Description

The return value is the number of characters which would be generated for the given input, excluding the trailing null, as per ISO C99. If the return is greater than or equal to *size*, the resulting string is truncated.

See the `vsnprintf` documentation for format string extensions over C99.

Name

scnprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int scnprintf (char * buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

size The size of the buffer, including the trailing null space

fmt The format string to use @...: Arguments for the format string

... variable arguments

Description

The return value is the number of characters written into *buf* not including the trailing '\0'. If *size* is == 0 the function returns 0.

Name

vsprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int vsprintf (char * buf, const char * fmt, va_list args);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

fmt The format string to use

args Arguments for the format string

Description

The function returns the number of characters written into *buf*. Use `vsnprintf` or `vscnprintf` in order to avoid buffer overflows.

If you're not already dealing with a va_list consider using `sprintf`.

See the `vsnprintf` documentation for format string extensions over C99.

Name

sprintf — Format a string and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int sprintf (char * buf, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

buf The buffer to place the result into

fmt The format string to use @...: Arguments for the format string

... variable arguments

Description

The function returns the number of characters written into *buf*. Use `snprintf` or `scnprintf` in order to avoid buffer overflows.

See the `vsnprintf` documentation for format string extensions over C99.

Name

vbin_printf — Parse a format string and place args' binary value in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int vbin_printf (u32 * bin_buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, va_list
args);
```

Arguments

bin_buf	The buffer to place args' binary value
size	The size of the buffer(by words(32bits), not characters)
fmt	The format string to use
args	Arguments for the format string

Description

The format follows C99 vsnprintf, except `n` is ignored, and its argument is skipped.

The return value is the number of words(32bits) which would be generated for the given input.

NOTE

If the return value is greater than *size*, the resulting bin_buf is NOT valid for `bstr_printf`.

Name

bstr_printf — Format a string from binary arguments and place it in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int bstr_printf (char * buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, const u32
* bin_buf);
```

Arguments

buf	The buffer to place the result into
size	The size of the buffer, including the trailing null space
fmt	The format string to use
bin_buf	Binary arguments for the format string

Description

This function like C99 vsnprintf, but the difference is that vsnprintf gets arguments from stack, and bstr_printf gets arguments from *bin_buf* which is a binary buffer that generated by vbin_printf.

The format follows C99 vsnprintf, but has some extensions: see vsnprintf comment for details.

The return value is the number of characters which would be generated for the given input, excluding the trailing '\0', as per ISO C99. If you want to have the exact number of characters written into *buf* as return value (not including the trailing '\0'), use `vscnprintf`. If the return is greater than or equal to *size*, the resulting string is truncated.

Name

bprintf — Parse a format string and place args' binary value in a buffer

Synopsis

```
int bprintf (u32 * bin_buf, size_t size, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

bin_buf	The buffer to place args' binary value
size	The size of the buffer(by words(32bits), not characters)
fmt	The format string to use @...: Arguments for the format string
...	variable arguments

Description

The function returns the number of words(u32) written into *bin_buf*.

Name

vsscanf — Unformat a buffer into a list of arguments

Synopsis

```
int vsscanf (const char * buf, const char * fmt, va_list args);
```

Arguments

buf input buffer

fmt format of buffer

args arguments

Name

sscanf — Unformat a buffer into a list of arguments

Synopsis

```
int sscanf (const char * buf, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

buf input buffer

fmt formatting of buffer @...: resulting arguments

... variable arguments

Name

kstrtol — convert a string to a long

Synopsis

```
int kstrtol (const char * s, unsigned int base, long * res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign or a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtoul — convert a string to an unsigned long

Synopsis

```
int kstrtoul (const char * s, unsigned int base, unsigned long * res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign, but not a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtoull — convert a string to an unsigned long long

Synopsis

```
int kstrtoull (const char * s, unsigned int base, unsigned long long
* res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign, but not a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtoll — convert a string to a long long

Synopsis

```
int kstrtoll (const char * s, unsigned int base, long long * res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign or a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtouint — convert a string to an unsigned int

Synopsis

```
int kstrtouint (const char * s, unsigned int base, unsigned int * res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign, but not a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtoint — convert a string to an int

Synopsis

```
int kstrtoint (const char * s, unsigned int base, int * res);
```

Arguments

s The start of the string. The string must be null-terminated, and may also include a single newline before its terminating null. The first character may also be a plus sign or a minus sign.

base The number base to use. The maximum supported base is 16. If base is given as 0, then the base of the string is automatically detected with the conventional semantics - If it begins with 0x the number will be parsed as a hexadecimal (case insensitive), if it otherwise begins with 0, it will be parsed as an octal number. Otherwise it will be parsed as a decimal.

res Where to write the result of the conversion on success.

Description

Returns 0 on success, -ERANGE on overflow and -EINVAL on parsing error. Used as a replacement for the obsolete simple_strtoull. Return code must be checked.

Name

kstrtobool — convert common user inputs into boolean values

Synopsis

```
int kstrtobool (const char * s, bool * res);
```

Arguments

s input string

res result

Description

This routine returns 0 iff the first character is one of 'Yy1Nn0', or [oO][NnFf] for “on” and “off”. Otherwise it will return -EINVAL. Value pointed to by res is updated upon finding a match.

String Manipulation

Name

strncasecmp — Case insensitive, length-limited string comparison

Synopsis

```
int strncasecmp (const char * s1, const char * s2, size_t len);
```

Arguments

s1 One string

s2 The other string

len the maximum number of characters to compare

Name

strcpy — Copy a NUL terminated string

Synopsis

```
char * strcpy (char * dest, const char * src);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy the string to

src Where to copy the string from

Name

strncpy — Copy a length-limited, C-string

Synopsis

```
char * strncpy (char * dest, const char * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy the string to

src Where to copy the string from

count The maximum number of bytes to copy

Description

The result is not NUL-terminated if the source exceeds *count* bytes.

In the case where the length of *src* is less than that of count, the remainder of *dest* will be padded with NUL.

Name

strlcpy — Copy a C-string into a sized buffer

Synopsis

```
size_t strlcpy (char * dest, const char * src, size_t size);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy the string to

src Where to copy the string from

size size of destination buffer

BSD

the result is always a valid NUL-terminated string that fits in the buffer (unless, of course, the buffer size is zero). It does not pad out the result like `strncpy` does.

Name

strscpy — Copy a C-string into a sized buffer

Synopsis

```
ssize_t strscpy (char * dest, const char * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy the string to

src Where to copy the string from

count Size of destination buffer

Description

Copy the string, or as much of it as fits, into the dest buffer. The routine returns the number of characters copied (not including the trailing NUL) or -E2BIG if the destination buffer wasn't big enough. The behavior is undefined if the string buffers overlap. The destination buffer is always NUL terminated, unless it's zero-sized.

Preferred to `strlcpy` since the API doesn't require reading memory from the src string beyond the specified “count” bytes, and since the return value is easier to error-check than `strlcpy`'s. In addition, the implementation is robust to the string changing out from underneath it, unlike the current `strlcpy` implementation.

Preferred to `strncpy` since it always returns a valid string, and doesn't unnecessarily force the tail of the destination buffer to be zeroed. If the zeroing is desired, it's likely cleaner to use `strscpy` with an overflow test, then just `memset` the tail of the dest buffer.

Name

strcat — Append one `NUL-terminated` string to another

Synopsis

```
char * strcat (char * dest, const char * src);
```

Arguments

`dest` The string to be appended to

`src` The string to append to it

Name

strncat — Append a length-limited, C-string to another

Synopsis

```
char * strncat (char * dest, const char * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest The string to be appended to

src The string to append to it

count The maximum numbers of bytes to copy

Description

Note that in contrast to `strncpy`, `strncat` ensures the result is terminated.

Name

strlcat — Append a length-limited, C-string to another

Synopsis

```
size_t strlcat (char * dest, const char * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest The string to be appended to

src The string to append to it

count The size of the destination buffer.

Name

strcmp — Compare two strings

Synopsis

```
int strcmp (const char * cs, const char * ct);
```

Arguments

cs One string

ct Another string

Name

strncmp — Compare two length-limited strings

Synopsis

```
int strncmp (const char * cs, const char * ct, size_t count);
```

Arguments

cs One string

ct Another string

count The maximum number of bytes to compare

Name

strchr — Find the first occurrence of a character in a string

Synopsis

```
char * strchr (const char * s, int c);
```

Arguments

- *s* The string to be searched
- *c* The character to search for

Name

strchrnul — Find and return a character in a string, or end of string

Synopsis

```
char * strchrnul (const char * s, int c);
```

Arguments

s The string to be searched

c The character to search for

Description

Returns pointer to first occurrence of 'c' in s. If c is not found, then return a pointer to the null byte at the end of s.

Name

strrchr — Find the last occurrence of a character in a string

Synopsis

```
char * strrchr (const char * s, int c);
```

Arguments

s The string to be searched

c The character to search for

Name

strnchr — Find a character in a length limited string

Synopsis

```
char * strnchr (const char * s, size_t count, int c);
```

Arguments

s	The string to be searched
count	The number of characters to be searched
c	The character to search for

Name

skip_spaces — Removes leading whitespace from *`str`*.

Synopsis

```
char * skip_spaces (const char * str);
```

Arguments

`str` The string to be stripped.

Description

Returns a pointer to the first non-whitespace character in *`str`*.

Name

strim — Removes leading and trailing whitespace from *s*.

Synopsis

```
char * strim (char * s);
```

Arguments

s The string to be stripped.

Description

Note that the first trailing whitespace is replaced with a `NUL-terminator` in the given string *s*. Returns a pointer to the first non-whitespace character in *s*.

Name

strlen — Find the length of a string

Synopsis

```
size_t strlen (const char * s);
```

Arguments

s The string to be sized

Name

strnlen — Find the length of a length-limited string

Synopsis

```
size_t strnlen (const char * s, size_t count);
```

Arguments

s The string to be sized

count The maximum number of bytes to search

Name

strspn — Calculate the length of the initial substring of *s* which only contain letters in *accept*

Synopsis

```
size_t strspn (const char * s, const char * accept);
```

Arguments

s The string to be searched

accept The string to search for

Name

strcspn — Calculate the length of the initial substring of *s* which does not contain letters in *reject*

Synopsis

```
size_t strcspn (const char * s, const char * reject);
```

Arguments

s The string to be searched

reject The string to avoid

Name

strpbrk — Find the first occurrence of a set of characters

Synopsis

```
char * strpbrk (const char * cs, const char * ct);
```

Arguments

cs The string to be searched

ct The characters to search for

Name

strsep — Split a string into tokens

Synopsis

```
char * strsep (char ** s, const char * ct);
```

Arguments

s The string to be searched

ct The characters to search for

Description

`strsep` updates *s* to point after the token, ready for the next call.

It returns empty tokens, too, behaving exactly like the libc function of that name. In fact, it was stolen from glibc2 and de-fancy-fied. Same semantics, slimmer shape. ;)

Name

sysfs_streq — return true if strings are equal, modulo trailing newline

Synopsis

```
bool sysfs_streq (const char * s1, const char * s2);
```

Arguments

s1 one string

s2 another string

Description

This routine returns true iff two strings are equal, treating both NUL and newline-then-NUL as equivalent string terminations. It's geared for use with sysfs input strings, which generally terminate with newlines but are compared against values without newlines.

Name

match_string — matches given string in an array

Synopsis

```
int match_string (const char *const * array, size_t n, const char *
string);
```

Arguments

array	array of strings
n	number of strings in the array or -1 for NULL terminated arrays
string	string to match with

Return

index of a *string* in the *array* if matches, or -EINVAL otherwise.

Name

memset — Fill a region of memory with the given value

Synopsis

```
void * memset (void * s, int c, size_t count);
```

Arguments

s Pointer to the start of the area.

c The byte to fill the area with

count The size of the area.

Description

Do not use `memset` to access IO space, use `memset_io` instead.

Name

memzero_explicit — Fill a region of memory (e.g. sensitive keying data) with 0s.

Synopsis

```
void memzero_explicit (void * s, size_t count);
```

Arguments

s Pointer to the start of the area.

count The size of the area.

Note

usually using `memset` is just fine (!), but in cases where clearing out _local_ data at the end of a scope is necessary, `memzero_explicit` should be used instead in order to prevent the compiler from optimising away zeroing.

`memzero_explicit` doesn't need an arch-specific version as it just invokes the one of `memset` implicitly.

Name

memcpy — Copy one area of memory to another

Synopsis

```
void * memcpy (void * dest, const void * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy to

src Where to copy from

count The size of the area.

Description

You should not use this function to access IO space, use `memcpy_toio` or `memcpy_fromio` instead.

Name

memmove — Copy one area of memory to another

Synopsis

```
void * memmove (void * dest, const void * src, size_t count);
```

Arguments

dest Where to copy to

src Where to copy from

count The size of the area.

Description

Unlike memcpy, memmove copes with overlapping areas.

Name

memcmp — Compare two areas of memory

Synopsis

```
__visible int memcmp (const void * cs, const void * ct, size_t count);
```

Arguments

cs One area of memory

ct Another area of memory

count The size of the area.

Name

memscan — Find a character in an area of memory.

Synopsis

```
void * memscan (void * addr, int c, size_t size);
```

Arguments

addr The memory area

c The byte to search for

size The size of the area.

Description

returns the address of the first occurrence of *c*, or 1 byte past the area if *c* is not found

Name

strstr — Find the first substring in a NUL terminated string

Synopsis

```
char * strstr (const char * s1, const char * s2);
```

Arguments

s1 The string to be searched

s2 The string to search for

Name

strnstr — Find the first substring in a length-limited string

Synopsis

```
char * strnstr (const char * s1, const char * s2, size_t len);
```

Arguments

s1 The string to be searched

s2 The string to search for

len the maximum number of characters to search

Name

memchr — Find a character in an area of memory.

Synopsis

```
void * memchr (const void * s, int c, size_t n);
```

Arguments

s The memory area

c The byte to search for

n The size of the area.

Description

returns the address of the first occurrence of *c*, or NULL if *c* is not found

Name

memchr_inv — Find an unmatching character in an area of memory.

Synopsis

```
void * memchr_inv (const void * start, int c, size_t bytes);
```

Arguments

start The memory area

c Find a character other than c

bytes The size of the area.

Description

returns the address of the first character other than *c*, or NULL if the whole buffer contains just *c*.

Name

strreplace — Replace all occurrences of character in string.

Synopsis

```
char * strreplace (char * s, char old, char new);
```

Arguments

s The string to operate on.

old The character being replaced.

new The character *old* is replaced with.

Description

Returns pointer to the nul byte at the end of *s*.

Bit Operations

Name

set_bit — Atomically set a bit in memory

Synopsis

```
void set_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr the bit to set

addr the address to start counting from

Description

This function is atomic and may not be reordered. See `__set_bit` if you do not require the atomic guarantees.

Note

there are no guarantees that this function will not be reordered on non x86 architectures, so if you are writing portable code, make sure not to rely on its reordering guarantees.

Note that *nr* may be almost arbitrarily large; this function is not restricted to acting on a single-word quantity.

Name

__set_bit — Set a bit in memory

Synopsis

```
void __set_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr the bit to set

addr the address to start counting from

Description

Unlike `set_bit`, this function is non-atomic and may be reordered. If it's called on the same region of memory simultaneously, the effect may be that only one operation succeeds.

Name

clear_bit — Clears a bit in memory

Synopsis

```
void clear_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to clear

addr Address to start counting from

Description

`clear_bit` is atomic and may not be reordered. However, it does not contain a memory barrier, so if it is used for locking purposes, you should call `smp_mb__before_atomic` and/or `smp_mb__after_atomic` in order to ensure changes are visible on other processors.

Name

__change_bit — Toggle a bit in memory

Synopsis

```
void __change_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr the bit to change

addr the address to start counting from

Description

Unlike `change_bit`, this function is non-atomic and may be reordered. If it's called on the same region of memory simultaneously, the effect may be that only one operation succeeds.

Name

change_bit — Toggle a bit in memory

Synopsis

```
void change_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to change

addr Address to start counting from

Description

`change_bit` is atomic and may not be reordered. Note that *nr* may be almost arbitrarily large; this function is not restricted to acting on a single-word quantity.

Name

test_and_set_bit — Set a bit and return its old value

Synopsis

```
int test_and_set_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to set

addr Address to count from

Description

This operation is atomic and cannot be reordered. It also implies a memory barrier.

Name

test_and_set_bit_lock — Set a bit and return its old value for lock

Synopsis

```
int test_and_set_bit_lock (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to set

addr Address to count from

Description

This is the same as test_and_set_bit on x86.

Name

__test_and_set_bit — Set a bit and return its old value

Synopsis

```
int __test_and_set_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to set

addr Address to count from

Description

This operation is non-atomic and can be reordered. If two examples of this operation race, one can appear to succeed but actually fail. You must protect multiple accesses with a lock.

Name

test_and_clear_bit — Clear a bit and return its old value

Synopsis

```
int test_and_clear_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to clear

addr Address to count from

Description

This operation is atomic and cannot be reordered. It also implies a memory barrier.

Name

__test_and_clear_bit — Clear a bit and return its old value

Synopsis

```
int __test_and_clear_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to clear

addr Address to count from

Description

This operation is non-atomic and can be reordered. If two examples of this operation race, one can appear to succeed but actually fail. You must protect multiple accesses with a lock.

Note

the operation is performed atomically with respect to the local CPU, but not other CPUs. Portable code should not rely on this behaviour. KVM relies on this behaviour on x86 for modifying memory that is also

accessed from a hypervisor on the same CPU if running in a VM

don't change this without also updating arch/x86/kernel/kvm.c

Name

test_and_change_bit — Change a bit and return its old value

Synopsis

```
int test_and_change_bit (long nr, volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr Bit to change

addr Address to count from

Description

This operation is atomic and cannot be reordered. It also implies a memory barrier.

Name

test_bit — Determine whether a bit is set

Synopsis

```
int test_bit (int nr, const volatile unsigned long * addr);
```

Arguments

nr bit number to test

addr Address to start counting from

Name

__ffs — find first set bit in word

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __ffs (unsigned long word);
```

Arguments

word The word to search

Description

Undefined if no bit exists, so code should check against 0 first.

Name

ffz — find first zero bit in word

Synopsis

```
unsigned long ffz (unsigned long word);
```

Arguments

word The word to search

Description

Undefined if no zero exists, so code should check against ~0UL first.

Name

ffs — find first set bit in word

Synopsis

```
int ffs (int x);
```

Arguments

x the word to search

Description

This is defined the same way as the libc and compiler builtin ffs routines, therefore differs in spirit from the other bitops.

ffs(value) returns 0 if value is 0 or the position of the first set bit if value is nonzero. The first (least significant) bit is at position 1.

Name

fls — find last set bit in word

Synopsis

```
int fls (int x);
```

Arguments

x the word to search

Description

This is defined in a similar way as the libc and compiler builtin ffs, but returns the position of the most significant set bit.

fls(value) returns 0 if value is 0 or the position of the last set bit if value is nonzero. The last (most significant) bit is at position 32.

Name

fls64 — find last set bit in a 64-bit word

Synopsis

```
int fls64 (__u64 x);
```

Arguments

x the word to search

Description

This is defined in a similar way as the libc and compiler builtin ffsll, but returns the position of the most significant set bit.

fls64(value) returns 0 if value is 0 or the position of the last set bit if value is nonzero. The last (most significant) bit is at position 64.

Chapter 3. Basic Kernel Library Functions

The Linux kernel provides more basic utility functions.

Bitmap Operations

Name

__bitmap_shift_right — logical right shift of the bits in a bitmap

Synopsis

```
void __bitmap_shift_right (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long *
src, unsigned shift, unsigned nbits);
```

Arguments

dst destination bitmap

src source bitmap

shift shift by this many bits

nbits bitmap size, in bits

Description

Shifting right (dividing) means moving bits in the MS -> LS bit direction. Zeros are fed into the vacated MS positions and the LS bits shifted off the bottom are lost.

Name

__bitmap_shift_left — logical left shift of the bits in a bitmap

Synopsis

```
void __bitmap_shift_left (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long *
src, unsigned int shift, unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

dst destination bitmap

src source bitmap

shift shift by this many bits

nbits bitmap size, in bits

Description

Shifting left (multiplying) means moving bits in the LS -> MS direction. Zeros are fed into the vacated LS bit positions and those MS bits shifted off the top are lost.

Name

bitmap_find_next_zero_area_off — find a contiguous aligned zero area

Synopsis

```
unsigned long bitmap_find_next_zero_area_off (unsigned long * map, unsigned long size, unsigned long start, unsigned int nr, unsigned long align_mask, unsigned long align_offset);
```

Arguments

map	The address to base the search on
size	The bitmap size in bits
start	The bitnumber to start searching at
nr	The number of zeroed bits we're looking for
align_mask	Alignment mask for zero area
align_offset	Alignment offset for zero area.

Description

The *align_mask* should be one less than a power of 2; the effect is that the bit offset of all zero areas this function finds plus *align_offset* is multiple of that power of 2.

Name

__bitmap_parse — convert an ASCII hex string into a bitmap.

Synopsis

```
int __bitmap_parse (const char * buf, unsigned int buflen, int is_user,
unsigned long * maskp, int nmaskbits);
```

Arguments

buf	pointer to buffer containing string.
buflen	buffer size in bytes. If string is smaller than this then it must be terminated with a \0.
is_user	location of buffer, 0 indicates kernel space
maskp	pointer to bitmap array that will contain result.
nmaskbits	size of bitmap, in bits.

Description

Commas group hex digits into chunks. Each chunk defines exactly 32 bits of the resultant bitmask. No chunk may specify a value larger than 32 bits (`-EOVERFLOW`), and if a chunk specifies a smaller value then leading 0-bits are prepended. `-EINVAL` is returned for illegal characters and for grouping errors such as “1,,5”, “,44”, “,” and "". Leading and trailing whitespace accepted, but not embedded whitespace.

Name

bitmap_parse_user — convert an ASCII hex string in a user buffer into a bitmap

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_parse_user (const char __user * ubuf, unsigned int ulen,
unsigned long * maskp, int nmaskbits);
```

Arguments

ubuf	pointer to user buffer containing string.
ulen	buffer size in bytes. If string is smaller than this then it must be terminated with a \0.
maskp	pointer to bitmap array that will contain result.
nmaskbits	size of bitmap, in bits.

Description

Wrapper for `__bitmap_parse`, providing it with user buffer.

We cannot have this as an inline function in bitmap.h because it needs linux/uaccess.h to get the `access_ok` declaration and this causes cyclic dependencies.

Name

bitmap_print_to_pagebuf — convert bitmap to list or hex format ASCII string

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_print_to_pagebuf (bool list, char * buf, const unsigned long
* maskp, int nmaskbits);
```

Arguments

list	indicates whether the bitmap must be list
buf	page aligned buffer into which string is placed
maskp	pointer to bitmap to convert
nmaskbits	size of bitmap, in bits

Description

Output format is a comma-separated list of decimal numbers and ranges if list is specified or hex digits grouped into comma-separated sets of 8 digits/set. Returns the number of characters written to buf.

It is assumed that *buf* is a pointer into a PAGE_SIZE area and that sufficient storage remains at *buf* to accommodate the `bitmap_print_to_pagebuf` output.

Name

bitmap_parselist_user —

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_parselist_user (const char __user * ubuf, unsigned int ulen,
unsigned long * maskp, int nmaskbits);
```

Arguments

ubuf pointer to user buffer containing string.

ulen buffer size in bytes. If string is smaller than this then it must be terminated with a \0.

maskp pointer to bitmap array that will contain result.

nmaskbits size of bitmap, in bits.

Description

Wrapper for `bitmap_parselist`, providing it with user buffer.

We cannot have this as an inline function in bitmap.h because it needs linux/uaccess.h to get the `access_ok` declaration and this causes cyclic dependencies.

Name

bitmap_remap — Apply map defined by a pair of bitmaps to another bitmap

Synopsis

```
void bitmap_remap (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long * src, const
unsigned long * old, const unsigned long * new, unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

dst remapped result

src subset to be remapped

old defines domain of map

new defines range of map

nbits number of bits in each of these bitmaps

Description

Let *old* and *new* define a mapping of bit positions, such that whatever position is held by the n-th set bit in *old* is mapped to the n-th set bit in *new*. In the more general case, allowing for the possibility that the weight 'w' of *new* is less than the weight of *old*, map the position of the n-th set bit in *old* to the position of the m-th set bit in *new*, where m == n % w.

If either of the *old* and *new* bitmaps are empty, or if *src* and *dst* point to the same location, then this routine copies *src* to *dst*.

The positions of unset bits in *old* are mapped to themselves (the identify map).

Apply the above specified mapping to *src*, placing the result in *dst*, clearing any bits previously set in *dst*.

For example, lets say that *old* has bits 4 through 7 set, and *new* has bits 12 through 15 set. This defines the mapping of bit position 4 to 12, 5 to 13, 6 to 14 and 7 to 15, and of all other bit positions unchanged. So if say *src* comes into this routine with bits 1, 5 and 7 set, then *dst* should leave with bits 1, 13 and 15 set.

Name

bitmap_bitremap — Apply map defined by a pair of bitmaps to a single bit

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_bitremap (int oldbit, const unsigned long * old, const un-
signed long * new, int bits);
```

Arguments

oldbit bit position to be mapped

old defines domain of map

new defines range of map

bits number of bits in each of these bitmaps

Description

Let *old* and *new* define a mapping of bit positions, such that whatever position is held by the n-th set bit in *old* is mapped to the n-th set bit in *new*. In the more general case, allowing for the possibility that the weight 'w' of *new* is less than the weight of *old*, map the position of the n-th set bit in *old* to the position of the m-th set bit in *new*, where m == n % w.

The positions of unset bits in *old* are mapped to themselves (the identify map).

Apply the above specified mapping to bit position *oldbit*, returning the new bit position.

For example, lets say that *old* has bits 4 through 7 set, and *new* has bits 12 through 15 set. This defines the mapping of bit position 4 to 12, 5 to 13, 6 to 14 and 7 to 15, and of all other bit positions unchanged. So if say *oldbit* is 5, then this routine returns 13.

Name

bitmap_onto — translate one bitmap relative to another

Synopsis

```
void bitmap_onto (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long * orig, const
unsigned long * relmap, unsigned int bits);
```

Arguments

dst	resulting translated bitmap
orig	original untranslated bitmap
relmap	bitmap relative to which translated
bits	number of bits in each of these bitmaps

Description

Set the n-th bit of *dst* iff there exists some m such that the n-th bit of *relmap* is set, the m-th bit of *orig* is set, and the n-th bit of *relmap* is also the m-th _set_ bit of *relmap*. (If you understood the previous sentence the first time your read it, you're overqualified for your current job.)

In other words, *orig* is mapped onto (surjectively) *dst*, using the map { <n, m> | the n-th bit of *relmap* is the m-th set bit of *relmap* }.

Any set bits in *orig* above bit number W, where W is the weight of (number of set bits in) *relmap* are mapped nowhere. In particular, if for all bits m set in *orig*, m >= W, then *dst* will end up empty. In situations where the possibility of such an empty result is not desired, one way to avoid it is to use the bitmap_fold operator, below, to first fold the *orig* bitmap over itself so that all its set bits x are in the range 0 <= x < W. The bitmap_fold operator does this by setting the bit (m % W) in *dst*, for each bit (m) set in *orig*.

Example [1] for bitmap_onto: Let's say *relmap* has bits 30-39 set, and *orig* has bits 1, 3, 5, 7, 9 and 11 set. Then on return from this routine, *dst* will have bits 31, 33, 35, 37 and 39 set.

When bit 0 is set in *orig*, it means turn on the bit in *dst* corresponding to whatever is the first bit (if any) that is turned on in *relmap*. Since bit 0 was off in the above example, we leave off that bit (bit 30) in *dst*.

When bit 1 is set in *orig* (as in the above example), it means turn on the bit in *dst* corresponding to whatever is the second bit that is turned on in *relmap*. The second bit in *relmap* that was turned on in the above example was bit 31, so we turned on bit 31 in *dst*.

Similarly, we turned on bits 33, 35, 37 and 39 in *dst*, because they were the 4th, 6th, 8th and 10th set bits set in *relmap*, and the 4th, 6th, 8th and 10th bits of *orig* (i.e. bits 3, 5, 7 and 9) were also set.

When bit 11 is set in *orig*, it means turn on the bit in *dst* corresponding to whatever is the twelfth bit that is turned on in *relmap*. In the above example, there were only ten bits turned on in *relmap* (30..39), so that bit 11 was set in *orig* had no affect on *dst*.

Example [2] for bitmap_fold + bitmap_onto: Let's say *relmap* has these ten bits set: 40 41 42 43 45 48 53 61 74 95 (for the curious, that's 40 plus the first ten terms of the Fibonacci sequence.)

Further lets say we use the following code, invoking bitmap_fold then bitmap_onto, as suggested above to avoid the possibility of an empty *dst* result:

unsigned long *tmp; // a temporary bitmap's bits

bitmap_fold(tmp, orig, bitmap_weight(relmap, bits), bits); bitmap_onto(dst, tmp, relmap, bits);

Then this table shows what various values of *dst* would be, for various *orig*'s. I list the zero-based positions of each set bit. The tmp column shows the intermediate result, as computed by using `bitmap_fold` to fold the *orig* bitmap modulo ten (the weight of *relmap*).

orig tmp *dst* 0 0 40 1 1 41 9 9 95 10 0 40 (*) 1 3 5 7 1 3 5 7 41 43 48 61 0 1 2 3 4 0 1 2 3 4 40 41 42 43 45 0 9 18 27 0 9 8 7 40 61 74 95 0 10 20 30 0 40 0 11 22 33 0 1 2 3 40 41 42 43 0 12 24 36 0 2 4 6 40 42 45 53 78 102 211 1 2 8 41 42 74 (*)

(*) For these marked lines, if we hadn't first done `bitmap_fold` into tmp, then the *dst* result would have been empty.

If either of *orig* or *relmap* is empty (no set bits), then *dst* will be returned empty.

If (as explained above) the only set bits in *orig* are in positions m where m >= W, (where W is the weight of *relmap*) then *dst* will once again be returned empty.

All bits in *dst* not set by the above rule are cleared.

Name

bitmap_fold — fold larger bitmap into smaller, modulo specified size

Synopsis

```
void bitmap_fold (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long * orig,
unsigned int sz, unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

dst resulting smaller bitmap

orig original larger bitmap

sz specified size

nbits number of bits in each of these bitmaps

Description

For each bit oldbit in *orig*, set bit oldbit mod *sz* in *dst*. Clear all other bits in *dst*. See further the comment and Example [2] for `bitmap_onto` for why and how to use this.

Name

bitmap_find_free_region — find a contiguous aligned mem region

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_find_free_region (unsigned long * bitmap, unsigned int bits,
int order);
```

Arguments

bitmap array of unsigned longs corresponding to the bitmap

bits number of bits in the bitmap

order region size (log base 2 of number of bits) to find

Description

Find a region of free (zero) bits in a *bitmap* of *bits* bits and allocate them (set them to one). Only consider regions of length a power (*order*) of two, aligned to that power of two, which makes the search algorithm much faster.

Return the bit offset in bitmap of the allocated region, or -errno on failure.

Name

bitmap_release_region — release allocated bitmap region

Synopsis

```
void bitmap_release_region (unsigned long * bitmap, unsigned int pos,
int order);
```

Arguments

bitmap array of unsigned longs corresponding to the bitmap

pos beginning of bit region to release

order region size (log base 2 of number of bits) to release

Description

This is the complement to `__bitmap_find_free_region` and releases the found region (by clearing it in the bitmap).

No return value.

Name

bitmap_allocate_region — allocate bitmap region

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_allocate_region (unsigned long * bitmap, unsigned int pos,
int order);
```

Arguments

bitmap array of unsigned longs corresponding to the bitmap

pos beginning of bit region to allocate

order region size (log base 2 of number of bits) to allocate

Description

Allocate (set bits in) a specified region of a bitmap.

Return 0 on success, or `-EBUSY` if specified region wasn't free (not all bits were zero).

Name

bitmap_from_u32array — copy the contents of a u32 array of bits to bitmap

Synopsis

```
unsigned int bitmap_from_u32array (unsigned long * bitmap, unsigned int
nbits, const u32 * buf, unsigned int nwords);
```

Arguments

bitmap array of unsigned longs, the destination bitmap, non NULL

nbits number of bits in *bitmap*

buf array of u32 (in host byte order), the source bitmap, non NULL

nwords number of u32 words in *buf*

Description

copy min(nbits, 32*nwords) bits from *buf* to *bitmap*, remaining bits between nword and nbits in *bitmap* (if any) are cleared. In last word of *bitmap*, the bits beyond nbits (if any) are kept unchanged.

Return the number of bits effectively copied.

Name

bitmap_to_u32array — copy the contents of bitmap to a u32 array of bits

Synopsis

```
unsigned int bitmap_to_u32array (u32 * buf, unsigned int nwords, const
unsigned long * bitmap, unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

buf array of u32 (in host byte order), the dest bitmap, non NULL

nwords number of u32 words in *buf*

bitmap array of unsigned longs, the source bitmap, non NULL

nbits number of bits in *bitmap*

Description

copy min(nbits, 32*nwords) bits from *bitmap* to *buf*. Remaining bits after nbits in *buf* (if any) are cleared.

Return the number of bits effectively copied.

Name

bitmap_copy_le — copy a bitmap, putting the bits into little-endian order.

Synopsis

```
void bitmap_copy_le (unsigned long * dst, const unsigned long * src,
unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

dst destination buffer

src bitmap to copy

nbits number of bits in the bitmap

Description

Require nbits % BITS_PER_LONG == 0.

Name

__bitmap_parselist — convert list format ASCII string to bitmap

Synopsis

```
int __bitmap_parselist (const char * buf, unsigned int buflen, int is_user, unsigned long * maskp, int nmaskbits);
```

Arguments

buf	read nul-terminated user string from this buffer
buflen	buffer size in bytes. If string is smaller than this then it must be terminated with a \0.
is_user	location of buffer, 0 indicates kernel space
maskp	write resulting mask here
nmaskbits	number of bits in mask to be written

Description

Input format is a comma-separated list of decimal numbers and ranges. Consecutively set bits are shown as two hyphen-separated decimal numbers, the smallest and largest bit numbers set in the range.

Returns 0 on success, -errno on invalid input strings.

Error values

`-EINVAL`: second number in range smaller than first `-EINVAL`: invalid character in string `-ERANGE`: bit number specified too large for mask

Name

bitmap_pos_to_ord — find ordinal of set bit at given position in bitmap

Synopsis

```
int bitmap_pos_to_ord (const unsigned long * buf, unsigned int pos,
unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

buf pointer to a bitmap

pos a bit position in *buf* (0 <= *pos* < *nbits*)

nbits number of valid bit positions in *buf*

Description

Map the bit at position *pos* in *buf* (of length *nbits*) to the ordinal of which set bit it is. If it is not set or if *pos* is not a valid bit position, map to -1.

If for example, just bits 4 through 7 are set in *buf*, then *pos* values 4 through 7 will get mapped to 0 through 3, respectively, and other *pos* values will get mapped to -1. When *pos* value 7 gets mapped to (returns) *ord* value 3 in this example, that means that bit 7 is the 3rd (starting with 0th) set bit in *buf*.

The bit positions 0 through *bits* are valid positions in *buf*.

Name

bitmap_ord_to_pos — find position of n-th set bit in bitmap

Synopsis

```
unsigned int bitmap_ord_to_pos (const unsigned long * buf, unsigned int ord, unsigned int nbits);
```

Arguments

buf pointer to bitmap

ord ordinal bit position (n-th set bit, n >= 0)

nbits number of valid bit positions in *buf*

Description

Map the ordinal offset of bit *ord* in *buf* to its position in *buf*. Value of *ord* should be in range 0 <= *ord* < weight(buf). If *ord* >= weight(buf), returns *nbits*.

If for example, just bits 4 through 7 are set in *buf*, then *ord* values 0 through 3 will get mapped to 4 through 7, respectively, and all other *ord* values returns *nbits*. When *ord* value 3 gets mapped to (returns) *pos* value 7 in this example, that means that the 3rd set bit (starting with 0th) is at position 7 in *buf*.

The bit positions 0 through *nbits*-1 are valid positions in *buf*.

Command-line Parsing

Name

get_option — Parse integer from an option string

Synopsis

```
int get_option (char ** str, int * pint);
```

Arguments

str option string

pint (output) integer value parsed from *str*

Description

Read an int from an option string; if available accept a subsequent comma as well.

Return values

0 - no int in string 1 - int found, no subsequent comma 2 - int found including a subsequent comma 3 - hyphen found to denote a range

Name

get_options — Parse a string into a list of integers

Synopsis

```
char * get_options (const char * str, int nints, int * ints);
```

Arguments

str String to be parsed

nints size of integer array

ints integer array

Description

This function parses a string containing a comma-separated list of integers, a hyphen-separated range of _positive_ integers, or a combination of both. The parse halts when the array is full, or when no more numbers can be retrieved from the string.

Return value is the character in the string which caused the parse to end (typically a null terminator, if *str* is completely parseable).

Name

memparse — parse a string with mem suffixes into a number

Synopsis

```
unsigned long long memparse (const char * ptr, char ** retptr);
```

Arguments

ptr Where parse begins

retptr (output) Optional pointer to next char after parse completes

Description

Parses a string into a number. The number stored at *ptr* is potentially suffixed with K, M, G, T, P, E.

CRC Functions

Name

crc7_be — update the CRC7 for the data buffer

Synopsis

```
u8 crc7_be (u8 crc, const u8 * buffer, size_t len);
```

Arguments

crc previous CRC7 value

buffer data pointer

len number of bytes in the buffer

Context

any

Description

Returns the updated CRC7 value. The CRC7 is left-aligned in the byte (the lsbit is always 0), as that makes the computation easier, and all callers want it in that form.

Name

crc16 — compute the CRC-16 for the data buffer

Synopsis

```
u16 crc16 (u16 crc, u8 const * buffer, size_t len);
```

Arguments

crc	previous CRC value
buffer	data pointer
len	number of bytes in the buffer

Description

Returns the updated CRC value.

Name

crc_itu_t — Compute the CRC-ITU-T for the data buffer

Synopsis

```
u16 crc_itu_t (u16 crc, const u8 * buffer, size_t len);
```

Arguments

crc	previous CRC value
buffer	data pointer
len	number of bytes in the buffer

Description

Returns the updated CRC value

Name

lib/crc32.c — Document generation inconsistency

Oops

Warning

The template for this document tried to insert the structured comment from the file `lib/crc32.c` at this point, but none was found. This dummy section is inserted to allow generation to continue.

Name

crc_ccitt — recompute the CRC for the data buffer

Synopsis

```
u16 crc_ccitt (u16 crc, u8 const * buffer, size_t len);
```

Arguments

crc previous CRC value

buffer data pointer

len number of bytes in the buffer

idr/ida Functions

idr synchronization (stolen from radix-tree.h)

`idr_find` is able to be called locklessly, using RCU. The caller must ensure calls to this function are made within `rcu_read_lock` regions. Other readers (lock-free or otherwise) and modifications may be running concurrently.

It is still required that the caller manage the synchronization and lifetimes of the items. So if RCU lock-free lookups are used, typically this would mean that the items have their own locks, or are amenable to lock-free access; and that the items are freed by RCU (or only freed after having been deleted from the idr tree *and* a `synchronize_rcu` grace period).

IDA - IDR based ID allocator

This is id allocator without id -> pointer translation. Memory usage is much lower than full blown idr because each id only occupies a bit. ida uses a custom leaf node which contains IDA_BITMAP_BITS slots.

2007-04-25 written by Tejun Heo <htejun*gmail*.com>

Name

idr_preload — preload for `idr_alloc`

Synopsis

```
void idr_preload (gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

`gfp_mask` allocation mask to use for preloading

Description

Preload per-cpu layer buffer for `idr_alloc`. Can only be used from process context and each `idr_preload` invocation should be matched with `idr_preload_end`. Note that preemption is disabled while preloaded.

The first `idr_alloc` in the preloaded section can be treated as if it were invoked with *`gfp_mask`* used for preloading. This allows using more permissive allocation masks for idrs protected by spinlocks.

For example, if `idr_alloc` below fails, the failure can be treated as if `idr_alloc` were called with GFP_KERNEL rather than GFP_NOWAIT.

idr_preload(GFP_KERNEL); spin_lock(lock);

id = idr_alloc(idr, ptr, start, end, GFP_NOWAIT);

spin_unlock(lock); `idr_preload_end`; if (id < 0) error;

Name

idr_alloc — allocate new idr entry

Synopsis

```
int idr_alloc (struct idr * idr, void * ptr, int start, int end, gfp_t
gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

idr	the (initialized) idr
ptr	pointer to be associated with the new id
start	the minimum id (inclusive)
end	the maximum id (exclusive, <= 0 for max)
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags

Description

Allocate an id in [start, end) and associate it with *ptr*. If no ID is available in the specified range, returns -ENOSPC. On memory allocation failure, returns -ENOMEM.

Note that *end* is treated as max when <= 0. This is to always allow using *start* + N as *end* as long as N is inside integer range.

The user is responsible for exclusively synchronizing all operations which may modify *idr*. However, read-only accesses such as idr_find or iteration can be performed under RCU read lock provided the user destroys *ptr* in RCU-safe way after removal from idr.

Name

idr_alloc_cyclic — allocate new idr entry in a cyclical fashion

Synopsis

```
int idr_alloc_cyclic (struct idr * idr, void * ptr, int start, int end,
gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

idr	the (initialized) idr
ptr	pointer to be associated with the new id
start	the minimum id (inclusive)
end	the maximum id (exclusive, <= 0 for max)
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags

Description

Essentially the same as idr_alloc, but prefers to allocate progressively higher ids if it can. If the “cur” counter wraps, then it will start again at the “start” end of the range and allocate one that has already been used.

Name

idr_remove — remove the given id and free its slot

Synopsis

```
void idr_remove (struct idr * idp, int id);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

id unique key

Name

idr_destroy — release all cached layers within an idr tree

Synopsis

```
void idr_destroy (struct idr * idp);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

Description

Free all id mappings and all idp_layers. After this function, *idp* is completely unused and can be freed / recycled. The caller is responsible for ensuring that no one else accesses *idp* during or after `idr_destroy`.

A typical clean-up sequence for objects stored in an idr tree will use `idr_for_each` to free all objects, if necessary, then `idr_destroy` to free up the id mappings and cached idr_layers.

Name

idr_for_each — iterate through all stored pointers

Synopsis

```
int idr_for_each (struct idr * idp, int (*fn) (int id, void *p, void
*data), void * data);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

fn function to be called for each pointer

data data passed back to callback function

Description

Iterate over the pointers registered with the given idr. The callback function will be called for each pointer currently registered, passing the id, the pointer and the data pointer passed to this function. It is not safe to modify the idr tree while in the callback, so functions such as idr_get_new and idr_remove are not allowed.

We check the return of *fn* each time. If it returns anything other than `0`, we break out and return that value.

The caller must serialize `idr_for_each` vs `idr_get_new` and `idr_remove`.

Name

idr_get_next — lookup next object of id to given id.

Synopsis

```
void * idr_get_next (struct idr * idp, int * nextidp);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

nextidp pointer to lookup key

Description

Returns pointer to registered object with id, which is next number to given id. After being looked up, **nextidp* will be updated for the next iteration.

This function can be called under `rcu_read_lock`, given that the leaf pointers lifetimes are correctly managed.

Name

idr_replace — replace pointer for given id

Synopsis

```
void * idr_replace (struct idr * idp, void * ptr, int id);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

ptr pointer you want associated with the id

id lookup key

Description

Replace the pointer registered with an id and return the old value. A -ENOENT return indicates that *id* was not found. A -EINVAL return indicates that *id* was not within valid constraints.

The caller must serialize with writers.

Name

idr_init — initialize idr handle

Synopsis

```
void idr_init (struct idr * idp);
```

Arguments

idp idr handle

Description

This function is use to set up the handle (*idp*) that you will pass to the rest of the functions.

Name

ida_pre_get — reserve resources for ida allocation

Synopsis

```
int ida_pre_get (struct ida * ida, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

ida ida handle

gfp_mask memory allocation flag

Description

This function should be called prior to locking and calling the following function. It preallocates enough memory to satisfy the worst possible allocation.

If the system is REALLY out of memory this function returns `0`, otherwise `1`.

Name

ida_get_new_above — allocate new ID above or equal to a start id

Synopsis

```
int ida_get_new_above (struct ida * ida, int starting_id, int * p_id);
```

Arguments

ida	ida handle
starting_id	id to start search at
p_id	pointer to the allocated handle

Description

Allocate new ID above or equal to *starting_id*. It should be called with any required locks.

If memory is required, it will return `-EAGAIN`, you should unlock and go back to the `ida_pre_get` call. If the ida is full, it will return `-ENOSPC`.

p_id returns a value in the range *starting_id* ... `0x7fffffff`.

Name

ida_remove — remove the given ID

Synopsis

```
void ida_remove (struct ida * ida, int id);
```

Arguments

ida ida handle

id ID to free

Name

ida_destroy — release all cached layers within an ida tree

Synopsis

```
void ida_destroy (struct ida * ida);
```

Arguments

ida ida handle

Name

ida_simple_get — get a new id.

Synopsis

```
int ida_simple_get (struct ida * ida, unsigned int start, unsigned int
end, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

ida	the (initialized) ida.
start	the minimum id (inclusive, < 0x8000000)
end	the maximum id (exclusive, < 0x8000000 or 0)
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags

Description

Allocates an id in the range start <= id < end, or returns -ENOSPC. On memory allocation failure, returns -ENOMEM.

Use `ida_simple_remove` to get rid of an id.

Name

ida_simple_remove — remove an allocated id.

Synopsis

```
void ida_simple_remove (struct ida * ida, unsigned int id);
```

Arguments

ida the (initialized) ida.

id the id returned by ida_simple_get.

Name

ida_init — initialize ida handle

Synopsis

```
void ida_init (struct ida * ida);
```

Arguments

ida ida handle

Description

This function is use to set up the handle (*ida*) that you will pass to the rest of the functions.

Chapter 4. Memory Management in Linux

The Slab Cache

Name

kmalloc — allocate memory

Synopsis

```
void * kmalloc (size_t size, gfp_t flags);
```

Arguments

size how many bytes of memory are required.

flags the type of memory to allocate.

Description

kmalloc is the normal method of allocating memory for objects smaller than page size in the kernel.

The *flags* argument may be one of:

GFP_USER - Allocate memory on behalf of user. May sleep.

GFP_KERNEL - Allocate normal kernel ram. May sleep.

GFP_ATOMIC - Allocation will not sleep. May use emergency pools. For example, use this inside interrupt handlers.

GFP_HIGHUSER - Allocate pages from high memory.

GFP_NOIO - Do not do any I/O at all while trying to get memory.

GFP_NOFS - Do not make any fs calls while trying to get memory.

GFP_NOWAIT - Allocation will not sleep.

__GFP_THISNODE - Allocate node-local memory only.

GFP_DMA - Allocation suitable for DMA. Should only be used for kmalloc caches. Otherwise, use a slab created with SLAB_DMA.

Also it is possible to set different flags by OR'ing in one or more of the following additional *flags*:

__GFP_COLD - Request cache-cold pages instead of trying to return cache-warm pages.

__GFP_HIGH - This allocation has high priority and may use emergency pools.

__GFP_NOFAIL - Indicate that this allocation is in no way allowed to fail (think twice before using).

__GFP_NORETRY - If memory is not immediately available, then give up at once.

__GFP_NOWARN - If allocation fails, don't issue any warnings.

__GFP_REPEAT - If allocation fails initially, try once more before failing.

There are other flags available as well, but these are not intended for general use, and so are not documented here. For a full list of potential flags, always refer to linux/gfp.h.

Name

kmalloc_array — allocate memory for an array.

Synopsis

```
void * kmalloc_array (size_t n, size_t size, gfp_t flags);
```

Arguments

n number of elements.

size element size.

flags the type of memory to allocate (see kmalloc).

Name

kcalloc — allocate memory for an array. The memory is set to zero.

Synopsis

```
void * kcalloc (size_t n, size_t size, gfp_t flags);
```

Arguments

n number of elements.

size element size.

flags the type of memory to allocate (see kmalloc).

Name

kzalloc — allocate memory. The memory is set to zero.

Synopsis

```
void * kzalloc (size_t size, gfp_t flags);
```

Arguments

size how many bytes of memory are required.

flags the type of memory to allocate (see kmalloc).

Name

kzalloc_node — allocate zeroed memory from a particular memory node.

Synopsis

```
void * kzalloc_node (size_t size, gfp_t flags, int node);
```

Arguments

size how many bytes of memory are required.

flags the type of memory to allocate (see kmalloc).

node memory node from which to allocate

Name

kmem_cache_alloc — Allocate an object

Synopsis

```
void * kmem_cache_alloc (struct kmem_cache * cachep, gfp_t flags);
```

Arguments

cachep The cache to allocate from.

flags See kmalloc.

Description

Allocate an object from this cache. The flags are only relevant if the cache has no available objects.

Name

kmem_cache_alloc_node — Allocate an object on the specified node

Synopsis

```
void * kmem_cache_alloc_node (struct kmem_cache * cachep, gfp_t flags,
int nodeid);
```

Arguments

cachep The cache to allocate from.

flags See kmalloc.

nodeid node number of the target node.

Description

Identical to kmem_cache_alloc but it will allocate memory on the given node, which can improve the performance for cpu bound structures.

Fallback to other node is possible if __GFP_THISNODE is not set.

Name

kmem_cache_free — Deallocate an object

Synopsis

```
void kmem_cache_free (struct kmem_cache * cachep, void * objp);
```

Arguments

cachep The cache the allocation was from.

objp The previously allocated object.

Description

Free an object which was previously allocated from this cache.

Name

kfree — free previously allocated memory

Synopsis

```
void kfree (const void * objp);
```

Arguments

objp pointer returned by kmalloc.

Description

If *objp* is NULL, no operation is performed.

Don't free memory not originally allocated by `kmalloc` or you will run into trouble.

Name

ksize — get the actual amount of memory allocated for a given object

Synopsis

```
size_t ksize (const void * objp);
```

Arguments

objp Pointer to the object

Description

kmalloc may internally round up allocations and return more memory than requested. `ksize` can be used to determine the actual amount of memory allocated. The caller may use this additional memory, even though a smaller amount of memory was initially specified with the kmalloc call. The caller must guarantee that objp points to a valid object previously allocated with either `kmalloc` or `kmem_cache_alloc`. The object must not be freed during the duration of the call.

Name

kfree_const — conditionally free memory

Synopsis

```
void kfree_const (const void * x);
```

Arguments

x pointer to the memory

Description

Function calls kfree only if *x* is not in .rodata section.

Name

kstrdup — allocate space for and copy an existing string

Synopsis

```
char * kstrdup (const char * s, gfp_t gfp);
```

Arguments

s the string to duplicate

gfp the GFP mask used in the `kmalloc` call when allocating memory

Name

kstrdup_const — conditionally duplicate an existing const string

Synopsis

```
const char * kstrdup_const (const char * s, gfp_t gfp);
```

Arguments

s the string to duplicate

gfp the GFP mask used in the `kmalloc` call when allocating memory

Description

Function returns source string if it is in .rodata section otherwise it fallbacks to kstrdup. Strings allocated by kstrdup_const should be freed by kfree_const.

Name

kstrndup — allocate space for and copy an existing string

Synopsis

```
char * kstrndup (const char * s, size_t max, gfp_t gfp);
```

Arguments

s the string to duplicate

max read at most *max* chars from *s*

gfp the GFP mask used in the `kmalloc` call when allocating memory

Name

kmemdup — duplicate region of memory

Synopsis

```
void * kmemdup (const void * src, size_t len, gfp_t gfp);
```

Arguments

src memory region to duplicate

len memory region length

gfp GFP mask to use

Name

memdup_user — duplicate memory region from user space

Synopsis

```
void * memdup_user (const void __user * src, size_t len);
```

Arguments

src source address in user space

len number of bytes to copy

Description

Returns an ERR_PTR on failure.

Name

memdup_user_nul — duplicate memory region from user space and NUL-terminate

Synopsis

```
void * memdup_user_nul (const void __user * src, size_t len);
```

Arguments

src source address in user space

len number of bytes to copy

Description

Returns an ERR_PTR on failure.

Name

get_user_pages_fast — pin user pages in memory

Synopsis

```
int get_user_pages_fast (unsigned long start, int nr_pages, int write,
struct page ** pages);
```

Arguments

start	starting user address
nr_pages	number of pages from start to pin
write	whether pages will be written to
pages	array that receives pointers to the pages pinned. Should be at least nr_pages long.

Description

Returns number of pages pinned. This may be fewer than the number requested. If nr_pages is 0 or negative, returns 0. If no pages were pinned, returns -errno.

get_user_pages_fast provides equivalent functionality to get_user_pages, operating on current and current->mm, with force=0 and vma=NULL. However unlike get_user_pages, it must be called without mmap_sem held.

get_user_pages_fast may take mmap_sem and page table locks, so no assumptions can be made about lack of locking. get_user_pages_fast is to be implemented in a way that is advantageous (vs `get_user_pages`) when the user memory area is already faulted in and present in ptes. However if the pages have to be faulted in, it may turn out to be slightly slower so callers need to carefully consider what to use. On many architectures, get_user_pages_fast simply falls back to get_user_pages.

User Space Memory Access

Name

__copy_to_user_inatomic — Copy a block of data into user space, with less checking.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __copy_to_user_inatomic (void __user * to, const void *
from, unsigned long n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in user space.

from Source address, in kernel space.

n Number of bytes to copy.

Context

User context only.

Description

Copy data from kernel space to user space. Caller must check the specified block with `access_ok` before calling this function. The caller should also make sure he pins the user space address so that we don't result in page fault and sleep.

Here we special-case 1, 2 and 4-byte copy_*_user invocations. On a fault we return the initial request size (1, 2 or 4), as copy_*_user should do. If a store crosses a page boundary and gets a fault, the x86 will not write anything, so this is accurate.

Name

__copy_to_user — Copy a block of data into user space, with less checking.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __copy_to_user (void __user * to, const void * from,
unsigned long n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in user space.

from Source address, in kernel space.

n Number of bytes to copy.

Context

User context only. This function may sleep if pagefaults are enabled.

Description

Copy data from kernel space to user space. Caller must check the specified block with `access_ok` before calling this function.

Returns number of bytes that could not be copied. On success, this will be zero.

Name

__copy_from_user — Copy a block of data from user space, with less checking.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __copy_from_user (void * to, const void __user * from,
unsigned long n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in kernel space.

from Source address, in user space.

n Number of bytes to copy.

Context

User context only. This function may sleep if pagefaults are enabled.

Description

Copy data from user space to kernel space. Caller must check the specified block with `access_ok` before calling this function.

Returns number of bytes that could not be copied. On success, this will be zero.

If some data could not be copied, this function will pad the copied data to the requested size using zero bytes.

An alternate version - `__copy_from_user_inatomic` - may be called from atomic context and will fail rather than sleep. In this case the uncopied bytes will *NOT* be padded with zeros. See fs/filemap.h for explanation of why this is needed.

Name

clear_user — Zero a block of memory in user space.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long clear_user (void __user * to, unsigned long n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in user space.

n Number of bytes to zero.

Description

Zero a block of memory in user space.

Returns number of bytes that could not be cleared. On success, this will be zero.

Name

__clear_user — Zero a block of memory in user space, with less checking.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __clear_user (void __user * to, unsigned long n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in user space.

n Number of bytes to zero.

Description

Zero a block of memory in user space. Caller must check the specified block with `access_ok` before calling this function.

Returns number of bytes that could not be cleared. On success, this will be zero.

Name

_copy_to_user — Copy a block of data into user space.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long _copy_to_user (void __user * to, const void * from,
unsigned n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in user space.

from Source address, in kernel space.

n Number of bytes to copy.

Context

User context only. This function may sleep if pagefaults are enabled.

Description

Copy data from kernel space to user space.

Returns number of bytes that could not be copied. On success, this will be zero.

Name

_copy_from_user — Copy a block of data from user space.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long _copy_from_user (void * to, const void __user * from,
unsigned n);
```

Arguments

to Destination address, in kernel space.

from Source address, in user space.

n Number of bytes to copy.

Context

User context only. This function may sleep if pagefaults are enabled.

Description

Copy data from user space to kernel space.

Returns number of bytes that could not be copied. On success, this will be zero.

If some data could not be copied, this function will pad the copied data to the requested size using zero bytes.

More Memory Management Functions

Name

read_cache_pages — populate an address space with some pages & start reads against them

Synopsis

```
int read_cache_pages (struct address_space * mapping, struct list_head
* pages, int (*filler) (void *, struct page *), void * data);
```

Arguments

mapping the address_space

pages The address of a list_head which contains the target pages. These pages have their ->index populated and are otherwise uninitialised.

filler callback routine for filling a single page.

data private data for the callback routine.

Description

Hides the details of the LRU cache etc from the filesystems.

Name

page_cache_sync_readahead — generic file readahead

Synopsis

```
void page_cache_sync_readahead (struct address_space * mapping, struct file_ra_state * ra, struct file * filp, pgoff_t offset, unsigned long req_size);
```

Arguments

mapping	address_space which holds the pagecache and I/O vectors
ra	file_ra_state which holds the readahead state
filp	passed on to ->readpage and ->readpages
offset	start offset into *mapping*, in pagecache page-sized units
req_size	hint: total size of the read which the caller is performing in pagecache pages

Description

page_cache_sync_readahead should be called when a cache miss happened: it will submit the read. The readahead logic may decide to piggyback more pages onto the read request if access patterns suggest it will improve performance.

Name

page_cache_async_readahead — file readahead for marked pages

Synopsis

```
void page_cache_async_readahead (struct address_space * mapping, struct file_ra_state * ra, struct file * filp, struct page * page, pgoff_t offset, unsigned long req_size);
```

Arguments

mapping	address_space which holds the pagecache and I/O vectors
ra	file_ra_state which holds the readahead state
filp	passed on to ->readpage and ->readpages
page	the page at *offset* which has the PG_readahead flag set
offset	start offset into *mapping*, in pagecache page-sized units
req_size	hint: total size of the read which the caller is performing in pagecache pages

Description

page_cache_async_readahead should be called when a page is used which has the PG_readahead flag; this is a marker to suggest that the application has used up enough of the readahead window that we should start pulling in more pages.

Name

delete_from_page_cache — delete page from page cache

Synopsis

```
void delete_from_page_cache (struct page * page);
```

Arguments

page the page which the kernel is trying to remove from page cache

Description

This must be called only on pages that have been verified to be in the page cache and locked. It will never put the page into the free list, the caller has a reference on the page.

Name

filemap_flush — mostly a non-blocking flush

Synopsis

```
int filemap_flush (struct address_space * mapping);
```

Arguments

mapping target address_space

Description

This is a mostly non-blocking flush. Not suitable for data-integrity purposes - I/O may not be started against all dirty pages.

Name

filemap_fdatawait_range — wait for writeback to complete

Synopsis

```
int filemap_fdatawait_range (struct address_space * mapping, loff_t start_byte, loff_t end_byte);
```

Arguments

mapping	address space structure to wait for
start_byte	offset in bytes where the range starts
end_byte	offset in bytes where the range ends (inclusive)

Description

Walk the list of under-writeback pages of the given address space in the given range and wait for all of them. Check error status of the address space and return it.

Since the error status of the address space is cleared by this function, callers are responsible for checking the return value and handling and/or reporting the error.

Name

filemap_fdatawait — wait for all under-writeback pages to complete

Synopsis

```
int filemap_fdatawait (struct address_space * mapping);
```

Arguments

mapping address space structure to wait for

Description

Walk the list of under-writeback pages of the given address space and wait for all of them. Check error status of the address space and return it.

Since the error status of the address space is cleared by this function, callers are responsible for checking the return value and handling and/or reporting the error.

Name

filemap_write_and_wait_range — write out & wait on a file range

Synopsis

```
int filemap_write_and_wait_range (struct address_space * mapping, loff_t
lstart, loff_t lend);
```

Arguments

mapping the address_space for the pages

lstart offset in bytes where the range starts

lend offset in bytes where the range ends (inclusive)

Description

Write out and wait upon file offsets lstart->lend, inclusive.

Note that `lend' is inclusive (describes the last byte to be written) so that this function can be used to write to the very end-of-file (end = -1).

Name

replace_page_cache_page — replace a pagecache page with a new one

Synopsis

```
int replace_page_cache_page (struct page * old, struct page * new, gfp_t
gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

old	page to be replaced
new	page to replace with
gfp_mask	allocation mode

Description

This function replaces a page in the pagecache with a new one. On success it acquires the pagecache reference for the new page and drops it for the old page. Both the old and new pages must be locked. This function does not add the new page to the LRU, the caller must do that.

The remove + add is atomic. The only way this function can fail is memory allocation failure.

Name

add_to_page_cache_locked — add a locked page to the pagecache

Synopsis

```
int add_to_page_cache_locked (struct page * page, struct address_space
* mapping, pgoff_t offset, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

page	page to add
mapping	the page's address_space
offset	page index
gfp_mask	page allocation mode

Description

This function is used to add a page to the pagecache. It must be locked. This function does not add the page to the LRU. The caller must do that.

Name

add_page_wait_queue — Add an arbitrary waiter to a page's wait queue

Synopsis

```
void add_page_wait_queue (struct page * page, wait_queue_t * waiter);
```

Arguments

page Page defining the wait queue of interest

waiter Waiter to add to the queue

Description

Add an arbitrary *waiter* to the wait queue for the nominated *page*.

Name

unlock_page — unlock a locked page

Synopsis

```
void unlock_page (struct page * page);
```

Arguments

page the page

Description

Unlocks the page and wakes up sleepers in `___wait_on_page_locked`. Also wakes sleepers in `wait_on_page_writeback` because the wakeup mechanism between PageLocked pages and PageWriteback pages is shared. But that's OK - sleepers in `wait_on_page_writeback` just go back to sleep.

The mb is necessary to enforce ordering between the clear_bit and the read of the waitqueue (to avoid SMP races with a parallel `wait_on_page_locked`).

Name

end_page_writeback — end writeback against a page

Synopsis

```
void end_page_writeback (struct page * page);
```

Arguments

page the page

Name

__lock_page — get a lock on the page, assuming we need to sleep to get it

Synopsis

```
void __lock_page (struct page * page);
```

Arguments

page the page to lock

Name

page_cache_next_hole — find the next hole (not-present entry)

Synopsis

```
pgoff_t page_cache_next_hole (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
index, unsigned long max_scan);
```

Arguments

mapping mapping

index index

max_scan maximum range to search

Description

Search the set [index, min(index+max_scan-1, MAX_INDEX)] for the lowest indexed hole.

Returns

the index of the hole if found, otherwise returns an index outside of the set specified (in which case 'return - index >= max_scan' will be true). In rare cases of index wrap-around, 0 will be returned.

page_cache_next_hole may be called under rcu_read_lock. However, like radix_tree_gang_lookup, this will not atomically search a snapshot of the tree at a single point in time. For example, if a hole is created at index 5, then subsequently a hole is created at index 10, page_cache_next_hole covering both indexes may return 10 if called under rcu_read_lock.

Name

page_cache_prev_hole — find the prev hole (not-present entry)

Synopsis

```
pgoff_t page_cache_prev_hole (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
index, unsigned long max_scan);
```

Arguments

mapping mapping

index index

max_scan maximum range to search

Description

Search backwards in the range [max(index-max_scan+1, 0), index] for the first hole.

Returns

the index of the hole if found, otherwise returns an index outside of the set specified (in which case 'index - return >= max_scan' will be true). In rare cases of wrap-around, ULONG_MAX will be returned.

page_cache_prev_hole may be called under rcu_read_lock. However, like radix_tree_gang_lookup, this will not atomically search a snapshot of the tree at a single point in time. For example, if a hole is created at index 10, then subsequently a hole is created at index 5, page_cache_prev_hole covering both indexes may return 5 if called under rcu_read_lock.

Name

find_get_entry — find and get a page cache entry

Synopsis

```
struct page * find_get_entry (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
offset);
```

Arguments

`mapping` the address_space to search

`offset` the page cache index

Description

Looks up the page cache slot at *`mapping`* & *`offset`*. If there is a page cache page, it is returned with an increased refcount.

If the slot holds a shadow entry of a previously evicted page, or a swap entry from shmem/tmpfs, it is returned.

Otherwise, `NULL` is returned.

Name

find_lock_entry — locate, pin and lock a page cache entry

Synopsis

```
struct page * find_lock_entry (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
offset);
```

Arguments

`mapping` the address_space to search

`offset` the page cache index

Description

Looks up the page cache slot at *`mapping`* & *`offset`*. If there is a page cache page, it is returned locked and with an increased refcount.

If the slot holds a shadow entry of a previously evicted page, or a swap entry from shmem/tmpfs, it is returned.

Otherwise, `NULL` is returned.

`find_lock_entry` may sleep.

Name

pagecache_get_page — find and get a page reference

Synopsis

```
struct page * pagecache_get_page (struct address_space * mapping,
pgoff_t offset, int fgp_flags, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

mapping	the address_space to search
offset	the page index
fgp_flags	PCG flags
gfp_mask	gfp mask to use for the page cache data page allocation

Description

Looks up the page cache slot at *mapping* & *offset*.

PCG flags modify how the page is returned.

FGP_ACCESSED

the page will be marked accessed

FGP_LOCK

Page is return locked

FGP_CREAT

If page is not present then a new page is allocated using *gfp_mask* and added to the page cache and the VM's LRU list. The page is returned locked and with an increased refcount. Otherwise, NULL is returned.

If FGP_LOCK or FGP_CREAT are specified then the function may sleep even if the GFP flags specified for FGP_CREAT are atomic.

If there is a page cache page, it is returned with an increased refcount.

Name

find_get_pages_contig — gang contiguous pagecache lookup

Synopsis

```
unsigned find_get_pages_contig (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
index, unsigned int nr_pages, struct page ** pages);
```

Arguments

mapping	The address_space to search
index	The starting page index
nr_pages	The maximum number of pages
pages	Where the resulting pages are placed

Description

`find_get_pages_contig` works exactly like `find_get_pages`, except that the returned number of pages are guaranteed to be contiguous.

`find_get_pages_contig` returns the number of pages which were found.

Name

find_get_pages_tag — find and return pages that match *tag*

Synopsis

```
unsigned find_get_pages_tag (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t *
index, int tag, unsigned int nr_pages, struct page ** pages);
```

Arguments

mapping	the address_space to search
index	the starting page index
tag	the tag index
nr_pages	the maximum number of pages
pages	where the resulting pages are placed

Description

Like find_get_pages, except we only return pages which are tagged with *tag*. We update *index* to index the next page for the traversal.

Name

find_get_entries_tag — find and return entries that match *tag*

Synopsis

```
unsigned find_get_entries_tag (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
start, int tag, unsigned int nr_entries, struct page ** entries, pgoff_t
* indices);
```

Arguments

mapping	the address_space to search
start	the starting page cache index
tag	the tag index
nr_entries	the maximum number of entries
entries	where the resulting entries are placed
indices	the cache indices corresponding to the entries in *entries*

Description

Like find_get_entries, except we only return entries which are tagged with *tag*.

Name

generic_file_read_iter — generic filesystem read routine

Synopsis

```
ssize_t generic_file_read_iter (struct kiocb * iocb, struct iov_iter
* iter);
```

Arguments

`iocb` kernel I/O control block

`iter` destination for the data read

Description

This is the "`read_iter`" routine for all filesystems that can use the page cache directly.

Name

filemap_fault — read in file data for page fault handling

Synopsis

```
int filemap_fault (struct vm_area_struct * vma, struct vm_fault * vmf);
```

Arguments

vma vma in which the fault was taken

vmf struct vm_fault containing details of the fault

Description

`filemap_fault` is invoked via the vma operations vector for a mapped memory region to read in file data during a page fault.

The goto's are kind of ugly, but this streamlines the normal case of having it in the page cache, and handles the special cases reasonably without having a lot of duplicated code.

vma->vm_mm->mmap_sem must be held on entry.

If our return value has VM_FAULT_RETRY set, it's because `lock_page_or_retry` returned 0. The mmap_sem has usually been released in this case. See `__lock_page_or_retry` for the exception.

If our return value does not have VM_FAULT_RETRY set, the mmap_sem has not been released.

We never return with VM_FAULT_RETRY and a bit from VM_FAULT_ERROR set.

Name

read_cache_page — read into page cache, fill it if needed

Synopsis

```
struct page * read_cache_page (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t
index, int (*filler) (void *, struct page *), void * data);
```

Arguments

mapping the page's address_space

index the page index

filler function to perform the read

data first arg to filler(data, page) function, often left as NULL

Description

Read into the page cache. If a page already exists, and `PageUptodate` is not set, try to fill the page and wait for it to become unlocked.

If the page does not get brought uptodate, return -EIO.

Name

read_cache_page_gfp — read into page cache, using specified page allocation flags.

Synopsis

```
struct page * read_cache_page_gfp (struct address_space * mapping,
pgoff_t index, gfp_t gfp);
```

Arguments

mapping the page's address_space

index the page index

gfp the page allocator flags to use if allocating

Description

This is the same as “read_mapping_page(mapping, index, NULL)”, but with any new page allocations done using the specified allocation flags.

If the page does not get brought uptodate, return -EIO.

Name

__generic_file_write_iter — write data to a file

Synopsis

```
ssize_t __generic_file_write_iter (struct kiocb * iocb, struct iov_iter
* from);
```

Arguments

iocb IO state structure (file, offset, etc.)

from iov_iter with data to write

Description

This function does all the work needed for actually writing data to a file. It does all basic checks, removes SUID from the file, updates modification times and calls proper subroutines depending on whether we do direct IO or a standard buffered write.

It expects i_mutex to be grabbed unless we work on a block device or similar object which does not need locking at all.

This function does *not* take care of syncing data in case of O_SYNC write. A caller has to handle it. This is mainly due to the fact that we want to avoid syncing under i_mutex.

Name

generic_file_write_iter — write data to a file

Synopsis

```
ssize_t generic_file_write_iter (struct kiocb * iocb, struct iov_iter
* from);
```

Arguments

iocb IO state structure

from iov_iter with data to write

Description

This is a wrapper around `__generic_file_write_iter` to be used by most filesystems. It takes care of syncing the file in case of O_SYNC file and acquires i_mutex as needed.

Name

try_to_release_page — release old fs-specific metadata on a page

Synopsis

```
int try_to_release_page (struct page * page, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

page the page which the kernel is trying to free

gfp_mask memory allocation flags (and I/O mode)

Description

The address_space is to try to release any data against the page (presumably at page->private). If the release was successful, return `1'. Otherwise return zero.

This may also be called if PG_fscache is set on a page, indicating that the page is known to the local caching routines.

The *gfp_mask* argument specifies whether I/O may be performed to release this page (__GFP_IO), and whether the call may block (__GFP_RECLAIM & __GFP_FS).

Name

zap_vma_ptes — remove ptes mapping the vma

Synopsis

```
int zap_vma_ptes (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long address,
unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

vma	vm_area_struct holding ptes to be zapped
address	starting address of pages to zap
size	number of bytes to zap

Description

This function only unmaps ptes assigned to VM_PFNMAP vmas.

The entire address range must be fully contained within the vma.

Returns 0 if successful.

Name

vm_insert_page — insert single page into user vma

Synopsis

```
int vm_insert_page (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long addr,
struct page * page);
```

Arguments

vma user vma to map to

addr target user address of this page

page source kernel page

Description

This allows drivers to insert individual pages they've allocated into a user vma.

The page has to be a nice clean _individual_ kernel allocation. If you allocate a compound page, you need to have marked it as such (__GFP_COMP), or manually just split the page up yourself (see `split_page`).

NOTE! Traditionally this was done with "`remap_pfn_range`" which took an arbitrary page protection parameter. This doesn't allow that. Your vma protection will have to be set up correctly, which means that if you want a shared writable mapping, you'd better ask for a shared writable mapping!

The page does not need to be reserved.

Usually this function is called from f_op->`mmap` handler under mm->mmap_sem write-lock, so it can change vma->vm_flags. Caller must set VM_MIXEDMAP on vma if it wants to call this function from other places, for example from page-fault handler.

Name

vm_insert_pfn — insert single pfn into user vma

Synopsis

```
int vm_insert_pfn (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long addr,
unsigned long pfn);
```

Arguments

vma user vma to map to

addr target user address of this page

pfn source kernel pfn

Description

Similar to vm_insert_page, this allows drivers to insert individual pages they've allocated into a user vma. Same comments apply.

This function should only be called from a vm_ops->fault handler, and in that case the handler should return NULL.

vma cannot be a COW mapping.

As this is called only for pages that do not currently exist, we do not need to flush old virtual caches or the TLB.

Name

remap_pfn_range — remap kernel memory to userspace

Synopsis

```
int remap_pfn_range (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long addr,
unsigned long pfn, unsigned long size, pgprot_t prot);
```

Arguments

vma user vma to map to

addr target user address to start at

pfn physical address of kernel memory

size size of map area

prot page protection flags for this mapping

Note

this is only safe if the mm semaphore is held when called.

Name

vm_iomap_memory — remap memory to userspace

Synopsis

```
int vm_iomap_memory (struct vm_area_struct * vma, phys_addr_t start,
unsigned long len);
```

Arguments

vma user vma to map to

start start of area

len size of area

Description

This is a simplified `io_remap_pfn_range` for common driver use. The driver just needs to give us the physical memory range to be mapped, we'll figure out the rest from the vma information.

NOTE! Some drivers might want to tweak vma->vm_page_prot first to get whatever write-combining details or similar.

Name

unmap_mapping_range — unmap the portion of all mmaps in the specified address_space corresponding to the specified page range in the underlying file.

Synopsis

```
void unmap_mapping_range (struct address_space * mapping, loff_t const holebegin, loff_t const holelen, int even_cows);
```

Arguments

mapping the address space containing mmaps to be unmapped.

holebegin byte in first page to unmap, relative to the start of the underlying file. This will be rounded down to a PAGE_SIZE boundary. Note that this is different from `truncate_pagecache`, which must keep the partial page. In contrast, we must get rid of partial pages.

holelen size of prospective hole in bytes. This will be rounded up to a PAGE_SIZE boundary. A holelen of zero truncates to the end of the file.

even_cows 1 when truncating a file, unmap even private COWed pages; but 0 when invalidating pagecache, don't throw away private data.

Name

follow_pfn — look up PFN at a user virtual address

Synopsis

```
int follow_pfn (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned long address,
unsigned long * pfn);
```

Arguments

vma	memory mapping
address	user virtual address
pfn	location to store found PFN

Description

Only IO mappings and raw PFN mappings are allowed.

Returns zero and the pfn at *pfn* on success, -ve otherwise.

Name

vm_unmap_aliases — unmap outstanding lazy aliases in the vmap layer

Synopsis

```
void vm_unmap_aliases ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

The vmap/vmalloc layer lazily flushes kernel virtual mappings primarily to amortize TLB flushing overheads. What this means is that any page you have now, may, in a former life, have been mapped into kernel virtual address by the vmap layer and so there might be some CPUs with TLB entries still referencing that page (additional to the regular 1:1 kernel mapping).

vm_unmap_aliases flushes all such lazy mappings. After it returns, we can be sure that none of the pages we have control over will have any aliases from the vmap layer.

Name

vm_unmap_ram — unmap linear kernel address space set up by vm_map_ram

Synopsis

```
void vm_unmap_ram (const void * mem, unsigned int count);
```

Arguments

mem the pointer returned by vm_map_ram

count the count passed to that vm_map_ram call (cannot unmap partial)

Name

vm_map_ram — map pages linearly into kernel virtual address (vmalloc space)

Synopsis

```
void * vm_map_ram (struct page ** pages, unsigned int count, int node,
pgprot_t prot);
```

Arguments

pages an array of pointers to the pages to be mapped

count number of pages

node prefer to allocate data structures on this node

prot memory protection to use. PAGE_KERNEL for regular RAM

Description

If you use this function for less than VMAP_MAX_ALLOC pages, it could be faster than vmap so it's good. But if you mix long-life and short-life objects with `vm_map_ram`, it could consume lots of address space through fragmentation (especially on a 32bit machine). You could see failures in the end. Please use this function for short-lived objects.

Returns

a pointer to the address that has been mapped, or `NULL` on failure

Name

unmap_kernel_range_noflush — unmap kernel VM area

Synopsis

```
void unmap_kernel_range_noflush (unsigned long addr, unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

addr start of the VM area to unmap

size size of the VM area to unmap

Description

Unmap PFN_UP(*size*) pages at *addr*. The VM area *addr* and *size* specify should have been allocated using `get_vm_area` and its friends.

NOTE

This function does NOT do any cache flushing. The caller is responsible for calling `flush_cache_vunmap` on to-be-mapped areas before calling this function and `flush_tlb_kernel_range` after.

Name

unmap_kernel_range — unmap kernel VM area and flush cache and TLB

Synopsis

```
void unmap_kernel_range (unsigned long addr, unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

addr start of the VM area to unmap

size size of the VM area to unmap

Description

Similar to `unmap_kernel_range_noflush` but flushes vcache before the unmapping and tlb after.

Name

vfree — release memory allocated by `vmalloc`

Synopsis

```
void vfree (const void * addr);
```

Arguments

`addr` memory base address

Description

Free the virtually continuous memory area starting at *`addr`*, as obtained from `vmalloc`, `vmalloc_32` or `__vmalloc`. If *`addr`* is NULL, no operation is performed.

Must not be called in NMI context (strictly speaking, only if we don't have CONFIG_ARCH_HAVE_NMI_SAFE_CMPXCHG, but making the calling conventions for `vfree` arch-depenedent would be a really bad idea)

NOTE

assumes that the object at *addr has a size >= sizeof(llist_node)

Name

vunmap — release virtual mapping obtained by `vmap`

Synopsis

```
void vunmap (const void * addr);
```

Arguments

`addr` memory base address

Description

Free the virtually contiguous memory area starting at *`addr`*, which was created from the page array passed to `vmap`.

Must not be called in interrupt context.

Name

vmap — map an array of pages into virtually contiguous space

Synopsis

```
void * vmap (struct page ** pages, unsigned int count, unsigned long
flags, pgprot_t prot);
```

Arguments

pages array of page pointers

count number of pages to map

flags vm_area->flags

prot page protection for the mapping

Description

Maps *count* pages from *pages* into contiguous kernel virtual space.

Name

vmalloc — allocate virtually contiguous memory

Synopsis

```
void * vmalloc (unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

size allocation size Allocate enough pages to cover *size* from the page level allocator and map them into contiguous kernel virtual space.

Description

For tight control over page level allocator and protection flags use `__vmalloc` instead.

Name

vzalloc — allocate virtually contiguous memory with zero fill

Synopsis

```
void * vzalloc (unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

size allocation size Allocate enough pages to cover *size* from the page level allocator and map them into contiguous kernel virtual space. The memory allocated is set to zero.

Description

For tight control over page level allocator and protection flags use `__vmalloc` instead.

Name

vmalloc_user — allocate zeroed virtually contiguous memory for userspace

Synopsis

```
void * vmalloc_user (unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

size allocation size

Description

The resulting memory area is zeroed so it can be mapped to userspace without leaking data.

Name

vmalloc_node — allocate memory on a specific node

Synopsis

```
void * vmalloc_node (unsigned long size, int node);
```

Arguments

size allocation size

node numa node

Description

Allocate enough pages to cover *size* from the page level allocator and map them into contiguous kernel virtual space.

For tight control over page level allocator and protection flags use `__vmalloc` instead.

Name

vzalloc_node — allocate memory on a specific node with zero fill

Synopsis

```
void * vzalloc_node (unsigned long size, int node);
```

Arguments

size allocation size

node numa node

Description

Allocate enough pages to cover *size* from the page level allocator and map them into contiguous kernel virtual space. The memory allocated is set to zero.

For tight control over page level allocator and protection flags use `__vmalloc_node` instead.

Name

vmalloc_32 — allocate virtually contiguous memory (32bit addressable)

Synopsis

```
void * vmalloc_32 (unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

size allocation size

Description

Allocate enough 32bit PA addressable pages to cover *size* from the page level allocator and map them into contiguous kernel virtual space.

Name

vmalloc_32_user — allocate zeroed virtually contiguous 32bit memory

Synopsis

```
void * vmalloc_32_user (unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

size allocation size

Description

The resulting memory area is 32bit addressable and zeroed so it can be mapped to userspace without leaking data.

Name

remap_vmalloc_range_partial — map vmalloc pages to userspace

Synopsis

```
int remap_vmalloc_range_partial (struct vm_area_struct * vma, unsigned
long uaddr, void * kaddr, unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

vma vma to cover

uaddr target user address to start at

kaddr virtual address of vmalloc kernel memory

size size of map area

Returns

0 for success, -Exxx on failure

This function checks that *kaddr* is a valid vmalloc'ed area, and that it is big enough to cover the range starting at *uaddr* in *vma*. Will return failure if that criteria isn't met.

Similar to `remap_pfn_range` (see mm/memory.c)

Name

remap_vmalloc_range — map vmalloc pages to userspace

Synopsis

```
int remap_vmalloc_range (struct vm_area_struct * vma, void * addr,
unsigned long pgoff);
```

Arguments

vma vma to cover (map full range of vma)

addr vmalloc memory

pgoff number of pages into addr before first page to map

Returns

0 for success, -Exxx on failure

This function checks that addr is a valid vmalloc'ed area, and that it is big enough to cover the vma. Will return failure if that criteria isn't met.

Similar to `remap_pfn_range` (see mm/memory.c)

Name

alloc_vm_area — allocate a range of kernel address space

Synopsis

```
struct vm_struct * alloc_vm_area (size_t size, pte_t ** ptes);
```

Arguments

size size of the area

ptes returns the PTEs for the address space

Returns

NULL on failure, vm_struct on success

This function reserves a range of kernel address space, and allocates pagetables to map that range. No actual mappings are created.

If *ptes* is non-NULL, pointers to the PTEs (in init_mm) allocated for the VM area are returned.

Name

__get_pfnblock_flags_mask — Return the requested group of flags for the pageblock_nr_pages block of pages

Synopsis

```
unsigned long __get_pfnblock_flags_mask (struct page * page, unsigned long pfn, unsigned long end_bitidx, unsigned long mask);
```

Arguments

page	The page within the block of interest
pfn	The target page frame number
end_bitidx	The last bit of interest to retrieve
mask	mask of bits that the caller is interested in

Return

pageblock_bits flags

Name

set_pfnblock_flags_mask — Set the requested group of flags for a pageblock_nr_pages block of pages

Synopsis

```
void set_pfnblock_flags_mask (struct page * page, unsigned long flags,
unsigned long pfn, unsigned long end_bitidx, unsigned long mask);
```

Arguments

page	The page within the block of interest
flags	The flags to set
pfn	The target page frame number
end_bitidx	The last bit of interest
mask	mask of bits that the caller is interested in

Name

alloc_pages_exact_nid — allocate an exact number of physically-contiguous pages on a node.

Synopsis

```
void * alloc_pages_exact_nid (int nid, size_t size, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

nid	the preferred node ID where memory should be allocated
size	the number of bytes to allocate
gfp_mask	GFP flags for the allocation

Description

Like `alloc_pages_exact`, but try to allocate on node nid first before falling back.

Name

nr_free_zone_pages — count number of pages beyond high watermark

Synopsis

```
unsigned long nr_free_zone_pages (int offset);
```

Arguments

offset The zone index of the highest zone

Description

`nr_free_zone_pages` counts the number of counts pages which are beyond the high watermark within all zones at or below a given zone index. For each zone, the number of pages is calculated as: managed_pages - high_pages

Name

nr_free_pagecache_pages — count number of pages beyond high watermark

Synopsis

```
unsigned long nr_free_pagecache_pages ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

`nr_free_pagecache_pages` counts the number of pages which are beyond the high watermark within all zones.

Name

find_next_best_node — find the next node that should appear in a given node's fallback list

Synopsis

```
int find_next_best_node (int node, nodemask_t * used_node_mask);
```

Arguments

node	node whose fallback list we're appending
used_node_mask	nodemask_t of already used nodes

Description

We use a number of factors to determine which is the next node that should appear on a given node's fallback list. The node should not have appeared already in *node*'s fallback list, and it should be the next closest node according to the distance array (which contains arbitrary distance values from each node to each node in the system), and should also prefer nodes with no CPUs, since presumably they'll have very little allocation pressure on them otherwise. It returns -1 if no node is found.

Name

free_bootmem_with_active_regions — Call memblock_free_early_nid for each active range

Synopsis

```
void free_bootmem_with_active_regions (int nid, unsigned long max_low_pfn);
```

Arguments

nid	The node to free memory on. If MAX_NUMNODES, all nodes are freed.
max_low_pfn	The highest PFN that will be passed to memblock_free_early_nid

Description

If an architecture guarantees that all ranges registered contain no holes and may be freed, this this function may be used instead of calling `memblock_free_early_nid` manually.

Name

sparse_memory_present_with_active_regions — Call memory_present for each active range

Synopsis

```
void sparse_memory_present_with_active_regions (int nid);
```

Arguments

nid The node to call memory_present for. If MAX_NUMNODES, all nodes will be used.

Description

If an architecture guarantees that all ranges registered contain no holes and may be freed, this function may be used instead of calling `memory_present` manually.

Name

get_pfn_range_for_nid — Return the start and end page frames for a node

Synopsis

```
void get_pfn_range_for_nid (unsigned int nid, unsigned long * start_pfn,
unsigned long * end_pfn);
```

Arguments

nid The nid to return the range for. If MAX_NUMNODES, the min and max PFN are returned.

start_pfn Passed by reference. On return, it will have the node start_pfn.

end_pfn Passed by reference. On return, it will have the node end_pfn.

Description

It returns the start and end page frame of a node based on information provided by `memblock_set_node`. If called for a node with no available memory, a warning is printed and the start and end PFNs will be 0.

Name

absent_pages_in_range — Return number of page frames in holes within a range

Synopsis

```
unsigned long absent_pages_in_range (unsigned long start_pfn, unsigned long end_pfn);
```

Arguments

start_pfn The start PFN to start searching for holes

end_pfn The end PFN to stop searching for holes

Description

It returns the number of pages frames in memory holes within a range.

Name

node_map_pfn_alignment — determine the maximum internode alignment

Synopsis

```
unsigned long node_map_pfn_alignment ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

This function should be called after node map is populated and sorted. It calculates the maximum power of two alignment which can distinguish all the nodes.

For example, if all nodes are 1GiB and aligned to 1GiB, the return value would indicate 1GiB alignment with (1 << (30 - PAGE_SHIFT)). If the nodes are shifted by 256MiB, 256MiB. Note that if only the last node is shifted, 1GiB is enough and this function will indicate so.

This is used to test whether pfn -> nid mapping of the chosen memory model has fine enough granularity to avoid incorrect mapping for the populated node map.

Returns the determined alignment in pfn's. 0 if there is no alignment requirement (single node).

Name

find_min_pfn_with_active_regions — Find the minimum PFN registered

Synopsis

```
unsigned long find_min_pfn_with_active_regions ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

It returns the minimum PFN based on information provided via `memblock_set_node`.

Name

free_area_init_nodes — Initialise all pg_data_t and zone data

Synopsis

```
void free_area_init_nodes (unsigned long * max_zone_pfn);
```

Arguments

max_zone_pfn an array of max PFNs for each zone

Description

This will call `free_area_init_node` for each active node in the system. Using the page ranges provided by `memblock_set_node`, the size of each zone in each node and their holes is calculated. If the maximum PFN between two adjacent zones match, it is assumed that the zone is empty. For example, if arch_max_dma_pfn == arch_max_dma32_pfn, it is assumed that arch_max_dma32_pfn has no pages. It is also assumed that a zone starts where the previous one ended. For example, ZONE_DMA32 starts at arch_max_dma_pfn.

Name

set_dma_reserve — set the specified number of pages reserved in the first zone

Synopsis

```
void set_dma_reserve (unsigned long new_dma_reserve);
```

Arguments

new_dma_reserve The number of pages to mark reserved

Description

The per-cpu batchsize and zone watermarks are determined by managed_pages. In the DMA zone, a significant percentage may be consumed by kernel image and other unfreeable allocations which can skew the watermarks badly. This function may optionally be used to account for unfreeable pages in the first zone (e.g., ZONE_DMA). The effect will be lower watermarks and smaller per-cpu batchsize.

Name

setup_per_zone_wmarks — called when min_free_kbytes changes or when memory is hot-{added|removed}

Synopsis

```
void setup_per_zone_wmarks ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

Ensures that the watermark[min,low,high] values for each zone are set correctly with respect to min_free_kbytes.

Name

alloc_contig_range — - tries to allocate given range of pages

Synopsis

```
int alloc_contig_range (unsigned long start, unsigned long end, unsigned
migratetype);
```

Arguments

start start PFN to allocate

end one-past-the-last PFN to allocate

migratetype migratetype of the underlaying pageblocks (either #MIGRATE_MOVABLE or #MIGRATE_CMA). All pageblocks in range must have the same migratetype and it must be either of the two.

Description

The PFN range does not have to be pageblock or MAX_ORDER_NR_PAGES aligned, however it's the caller's responsibility to guarantee that we are the only thread that changes migrate type of pageblocks the pages fall in.

The PFN range must belong to a single zone.

Returns zero on success or negative error code. On success all pages which PFN is in [start, end) are allocated for the caller and need to be freed with `free_contig_range`.

Name

mempool_destroy — deallocate a memory pool

Synopsis

```
void mempool_destroy (mempool_t * pool);
```

Arguments

pool pointer to the memory pool which was allocated via `mempool_create`.

Description

Free all reserved elements in *pool* and *pool* itself. This function only sleeps if the `free_fn` function sleeps.

Name

mempool_create — create a memory pool

Synopsis

```
mempool_t * mempool_create (int min_nr, mempool_alloc_t * alloc_fn,
mempool_free_t * free_fn, void * pool_data);
```

Arguments

min_nr the minimum number of elements guaranteed to be allocated for this pool.

alloc_fn user-defined element-allocation function.

free_fn user-defined element-freeing function.

pool_data optional private data available to the user-defined functions.

Description

this function creates and allocates a guaranteed size, preallocated memory pool. The pool can be used from the `mempool_alloc` and `mempool_free` functions. This function might sleep. Both the `alloc_fn` and the `free_fn` functions might sleep - as long as the `mempool_alloc` function is not called from IRQ contexts.

Name

mempool_resize — resize an existing memory pool

Synopsis

```
int mempool_resize (mempool_t * pool, int new_min_nr);
```

Arguments

pool pointer to the memory pool which was allocated via `mempool_create`.

new_min_nr the new minimum number of elements guaranteed to be allocated for this pool.

Description

This function shrinks/grows the pool. In the case of growing, it cannot be guaranteed that the pool will be grown to the new size immediately, but new `mempool_free` calls will refill it. This function may sleep.

Note, the caller must guarantee that no mempool_destroy is called while this function is running. `mempool_alloc` & `mempool_free` might be called (eg. from IRQ contexts) while this function executes.

Name

mempool_alloc — allocate an element from a specific memory pool

Synopsis

```
void * mempool_alloc (mempool_t * pool, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

pool pointer to the memory pool which was allocated via `mempool_create`.

gfp_mask the usual allocation bitmask.

Description

this function only sleeps if the `alloc_fn` function sleeps or returns NULL. Note that due to preallocation, this function *never* fails when called from process contexts. (it might fail if called from an IRQ context.)

Note

using __GFP_ZERO is not supported.

Name

mempool_free — return an element to the pool.

Synopsis

```
void mempool_free (void * element, mempool_t * pool);
```

Arguments

element pool element pointer.

pool pointer to the memory pool which was allocated via `mempool_create`.

Description

this function only sleeps if the `free_fn` function sleeps.

Name

dma_pool_create — Creates a pool of consistent memory blocks, for dma.

Synopsis

```
struct dma_pool * dma_pool_create (const char * name, struct device *
dev, size_t size, size_t align, size_t boundary);
```

Arguments

name	name of pool, for diagnostics
dev	device that will be doing the DMA
size	size of the blocks in this pool.
align	alignment requirement for blocks; must be a power of two
boundary	returned blocks won't cross this power of two boundary

Context

!in_interrupt

Description

Returns a dma allocation pool with the requested characteristics, or null if one can't be created. Given one of these pools, dma_pool_alloc may be used to allocate memory. Such memory will all have “consistent” DMA mappings, accessible by the device and its driver without using cache flushing primitives. The actual size of blocks allocated may be larger than requested because of alignment.

If *boundary* is nonzero, objects returned from dma_pool_alloc won't cross that size boundary. This is useful for devices which have addressing restrictions on individual DMA transfers, such as not crossing boundaries of 4KBytes.

Name

dma_pool_destroy — destroys a pool of dma memory blocks.

Synopsis

```
void dma_pool_destroy (struct dma_pool * pool);
```

Arguments

pool dma pool that will be destroyed

Context

!in_interrupt

Description

Caller guarantees that no more memory from the pool is in use, and that nothing will try to use the pool after this call.

Name

dma_pool_alloc — get a block of consistent memory

Synopsis

```
void * dma_pool_alloc (struct dma_pool * pool, gfp_t mem_flags,
dma_addr_t * handle);
```

Arguments

pool	dma pool that will produce the block
mem_flags	GFP_* bitmask
handle	pointer to dma address of block

Description

This returns the kernel virtual address of a currently unused block, and reports its dma address through the handle. If such a memory block can't be allocated, NULL is returned.

Name

dma_pool_free — put block back into dma pool

Synopsis

```
void dma_pool_free (struct dma_pool * pool, void * vaddr, dma_addr_t
dma);
```

Arguments

pool the dma pool holding the block

vaddr virtual address of block

dma dma address of block

Description

Caller promises neither device nor driver will again touch this block unless it is first re-allocated.

Name

dmam_pool_create — Managed `dma_pool_create`

Synopsis

```
struct dma_pool * dmam_pool_create (const char * name, struct device *
dev, size_t size, size_t align, size_t allocation);
```

Arguments

name	name of pool, for diagnostics
dev	device that will be doing the DMA
size	size of the blocks in this pool.
align	alignment requirement for blocks; must be a power of two
allocation	returned blocks won't cross this boundary (or zero)

Description

Managed `dma_pool_create`. DMA pool created with this function is automatically destroyed on driver detach.

Name

dmam_pool_destroy — Managed `dma_pool_destroy`

Synopsis

```
void dmam_pool_destroy (struct dma_pool * pool);
```

Arguments

`pool` dma pool that will be destroyed

Description

Managed `dma_pool_destroy`.

Name

balance_dirty_pages_ratelimited — balance dirty memory state

Synopsis

```
void balance_dirty_pages_ratelimited (struct address_space * mapping);
```

Arguments

mapping address_space which was dirtied

Description

Processes which are dirtying memory should call in here once for each page which was newly dirtied. The function will periodically check the system's dirty state and will initiate writeback if needed.

On really big machines, get_writeback_state is expensive, so try to avoid calling it too often (ratelimiting). But once we're over the dirty memory limit we decrease the ratelimiting by a lot, to prevent individual processes from overshooting the limit by (ratelimit_pages) each.

Name

tag_pages_for_writeback — tag pages to be written by write_cache_pages

Synopsis

```
void tag_pages_for_writeback (struct address_space * mapping, pgoff_t start, pgoff_t end);
```

Arguments

mapping address space structure to write

start starting page index

end ending page index (inclusive)

Description

This function scans the page range from *start* to *end* (inclusive) and tags all pages that have DIRTY tag set with a special TOWRITE tag. The idea is that write_cache_pages (or whoever calls this function) will then use TOWRITE tag to identify pages eligible for writeback. This mechanism is used to avoid livelocking of writeback by a process steadily creating new dirty pages in the file (thus it is important for this function to be quick so that it can tag pages faster than a dirtying process can create them).

Name

write_cache_pages — walk the list of dirty pages of the given address space and write all of them.

Synopsis

```
int write_cache_pages (struct address_space * mapping, struct
writeback_control * wbc, writepage_t writepage, void * data);
```

Arguments

mapping	address space structure to write
wbc	subtract the number of written pages from *wbc->nr_to_write
writepage	function called for each page
data	data passed to writepage function

Description

If a page is already under I/O, `write_cache_pages` skips it, even if it's dirty. This is desirable behaviour for memory-cleaning writeback, but it is INCORRECT for data-integrity system calls such as `fsync`. `fsync` and `msync` need to guarantee that all the data which was dirty at the time the call was made get new I/O started against them. If wbc->sync_mode is WB_SYNC_ALL then we were called for data integrity and we must wait for existing IO to complete.

To avoid livelocks (when other process dirties new pages), we first tag pages which should be written back with TOWRITE tag and only then start writing them. For data-integrity sync we have to be careful so that we do not miss some pages (e.g., because some other process has cleared TOWRITE tag we set). The rule we follow is that TOWRITE tag can be cleared only by the process clearing the DIRTY tag (and submitting the page for IO).

Name

generic_writepages — walk the list of dirty pages of the given address space and `writepage` all of them.

Synopsis

```
int generic_writepages (struct address_space * mapping, struct writeback_control * wbc);
```

Arguments

`mapping` address space structure to write

`wbc` subtract the number of written pages from *`wbc`->nr_to_write

Description

This is a library function, which implements the `writepages` address_space_operation.

Name

write_one_page — write out a single page and optionally wait on I/O

Synopsis

```
int write_one_page (struct page * page, int wait);
```

Arguments

page the page to write

wait if true, wait on writeout

Description

The page must be locked by the caller and will be unlocked upon return.

`write_one_page` returns a negative error code if I/O failed.

Name

wait_for_stable_page — wait for writeback to finish, if necessary.

Synopsis

```
void wait_for_stable_page (struct page * page);
```

Arguments

page The page to wait on.

Description

This function determines if the given page is related to a backing device that requires page contents to be held stable during writeback. If so, then it will wait for any pending writeback to complete.

Name

truncate_inode_pages_range — truncate range of pages specified by start & end byte offsets

Synopsis

```
void truncate_inode_pages_range (struct address_space * mapping, loff_t lstart, loff_t lend);
```

Arguments

mapping mapping to truncate

lstart offset from which to truncate

lend offset to which to truncate (inclusive)

Description

Truncate the page cache, removing the pages that are between specified offsets (and zeroing out partial pages if lstart or lend + 1 is not page aligned).

Truncate takes two passes - the first pass is nonblocking. It will not block on page locks and it will not block on writeback. The second pass will wait. This is to prevent as much IO as possible in the affected region. The first pass will remove most pages, so the search cost of the second pass is low.

We pass down the cache-hot hint to the page freeing code. Even if the mapping is large, it is probably the case that the final pages are the most recently touched, and freeing happens in ascending file offset order.

Note that since ->`invalidatepage` accepts range to invalidate truncate_inode_pages_range is able to handle cases where lend + 1 is not page aligned properly.

Name

truncate_inode_pages — truncate *all* the pages from an offset

Synopsis

```
void truncate_inode_pages (struct address_space * mapping, loff_t lstart);
```

Arguments

mapping mapping to truncate

lstart offset from which to truncate

Description

Called under (and serialised by) inode->i_mutex.

Note

When this function returns, there can be a page in the process of deletion (inside `__delete_from_page_cache`) in the specified range. Thus mapping->nrpages can be non-zero when this function returns even after truncation of the whole mapping.

Name

truncate_inode_pages_final — truncate *all* pages before inode dies

Synopsis

```
void truncate_inode_pages_final (struct address_space * mapping);
```

Arguments

mapping mapping to truncate

Description

Called under (and serialized by) inode->i_mutex.

Filesystems have to use this in the .evict_inode path to inform the VM that this is the final truncate and the inode is going away.

Name

invalidate_mapping_pages — Invalidate all the unlocked pages of one inode

Synopsis

```
unsigned long invalidate_mapping_pages (struct address_space * mapping,
pgoff_t start, pgoff_t end);
```

Arguments

mapping the address_space which holds the pages to invalidate

start the offset 'from' which to invalidate

end the offset 'to' which to invalidate (inclusive)

Description

This function only removes the unlocked pages, if you want to remove all the pages of one inode, you must call truncate_inode_pages.

`invalidate_mapping_pages` will not block on IO activity. It will not invalidate pages which are dirty, locked, under writeback or mapped into pagetables.

Name

invalidate_inode_pages2_range — remove range of pages from an address_space

Synopsis

```
int invalidate_inode_pages2_range (struct address_space * mapping,
pgoff_t start, pgoff_t end);
```

Arguments

mapping the address_space

start the page offset 'from' which to invalidate

end the page offset 'to' which to invalidate (inclusive)

Description

Any pages which are found to be mapped into pagetables are unmapped prior to invalidation.

Returns -EBUSY if any pages could not be invalidated.

Name

invalidate_inode_pages2 — remove all pages from an address_space

Synopsis

```
int invalidate_inode_pages2 (struct address_space * mapping);
```

Arguments

mapping the address_space

Description

Any pages which are found to be mapped into pagetables are unmapped prior to invalidation.

Returns -EBUSY if any pages could not be invalidated.

Name

truncate_pagecache — unmap and remove pagecache that has been truncated

Synopsis

```
void truncate_pagecache (struct inode * inode, loff_t newsize);
```

Arguments

inode inode

newsize new file size

Description

inode's new i_size must already be written before truncate_pagecache is called.

This function should typically be called before the filesystem releases resources associated with the freed range (eg. deallocates blocks). This way, pagecache will always stay logically coherent with on-disk format, and the filesystem would not have to deal with situations such as writepage being called for a page that has already had its underlying blocks deallocated.

Name

truncate_setsize — update inode and pagecache for a new file size

Synopsis

```
void truncate_setsize (struct inode * inode, loff_t newsize);
```

Arguments

inode inode

newsize new file size

Description

truncate_setsize updates i_size and performs pagecache truncation (if necessary) to *newsize*. It will be typically be called from the filesystem's setattr function when ATTR_SIZE is passed in.

Must be called with a lock serializing truncates and writes (generally i_mutex but e.g. xfs uses a different lock) and before all filesystem specific block truncation has been performed.

Name

pagecache_isize_extended — update pagecache after extension of i_size

Synopsis

```
void pagecache_isize_extended (struct inode * inode, loff_t from, loff_t
to);
```

Arguments

inode inode for which i_size was extended

from original inode size

to new inode size

Description

Handle extension of inode size either caused by extending truncate or by write starting after current i_size. We mark the page straddling current i_size RO so that `page_mkwrite` is called on the nearest write access to the page. This way filesystem can be sure that `page_mkwrite` is called on the page before user writes to the page via mmap after the i_size has been changed.

The function must be called after i_size is updated so that page fault coming after we unlock the page will already see the new i_size. The function must be called while we still hold i_mutex - this not only makes sure i_size is stable but also that userspace cannot observe new i_size value before we are prepared to store mmap writes at new inode size.

Name

truncate_pagecache_range — unmap and remove pagecache that is hole-punched

Synopsis

```
void truncate_pagecache_range (struct inode * inode, loff_t lstart,
loff_t lend);
```

Arguments

inode inode

lstart offset of beginning of hole

lend offset of last byte of hole

Description

This function should typically be called before the filesystem releases resources associated with the freed range (eg. deallocates blocks). This way, pagecache will always stay logically coherent with on-disk format, and the filesystem would not have to deal with situations such as writepage being called for a page that has already had its underlying blocks deallocated.

Chapter 5. Kernel IPC facilities

IPC utilities

Name

ipc_init — initialise ipc subsystem

Synopsis

```
int ipc_init ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

The various sysv ipc resources (semaphores, messages and shared memory) are initialised.

A callback routine is registered into the memory hotplug notifier

chain

since msgmni scales to lowmem this callback routine will be called upon successful memory add / remove to recompute msmgni.

Name

ipc_init_ids — initialise ipc identifiers

Synopsis

```
void ipc_init_ids (struct ipc_ids * ids);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

Description

Set up the sequence range to use for the ipc identifier range (limited below IPCMNI) then initialise the ids idr.

Name

ipc_init_proc_interface — create a proc interface for sysipc types using a seq_file interface.

Synopsis

```
void ipc_init_proc_interface (const char * path, const char * header,
int ids, int (*show) (struct seq_file *, void *));
```

Arguments

path Path in procfs

header Banner to be printed at the beginning of the file.

ids ipc id table to iterate.

show show routine.

Name

ipc_findkey — find a key in an ipc identifier set

Synopsis

```
struct kern_ipc_perm * ipc_findkey (struct ipc_ids * ids, key_t key);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

key key to find

Description

Returns the locked pointer to the ipc structure if found or NULL otherwise. If key is found ipc points to the owning ipc structure

Called with ipc_ids.rwsem held.

Name

ipc_get_maxid — get the last assigned id

Synopsis

```
int ipc_get_maxid (struct ipc_ids * ids);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

Description

Called with ipc_ids.rwsem held.

Name

ipc_addid — add an ipc identifier

Synopsis

```
int ipc_addid (struct ipc_ids * ids, struct kern_ipc_perm * new, int
size);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

new new ipc permission set

size limit for the number of used ids

Description

Add an entry 'new' to the ipc ids idr. The permissions object is initialised and the first free entry is set up and the id assigned is returned. The 'new' entry is returned in a locked state on success. On failure the entry is not locked and a negative err-code is returned.

Called with writer ipc_ids.rwsem held.

Name

ipcget_new — create a new ipc object

Synopsis

```
int ipcget_new (struct ipc_namespace * ns, struct ipc_ids * ids, const
struct ipc_ops * ops, struct ipc_params * params);
```

Arguments

ns	ipc namespace
ids	ipc identifier set
ops	the actual creation routine to call
params	its parameters

Description

This routine is called by sys_msgget, `sys_semget` and `sys_shmget` when the key is IPC_PRIVATE.

Name

ipc_check_perms — check security and permissions for an ipc object

Synopsis

```
int ipc_check_perms (struct ipc_namespace * ns, struct kern_ipc_perm *
ipcp, const struct ipc_ops * ops, struct ipc_params * params);
```

Arguments

ns ipc namespace

ipcp ipc permission set

ops the actual security routine to call

params its parameters

Description

This routine is called by `sys_msgget`, `sys_semget` and `sys_shmget` when the key is not IPC_PRIVATE and that key already exists in the ds IDR.

On success, the ipc id is returned.

It is called with ipc_ids.rwsem and ipcp->lock held.

Name

ipcget_public — get an ipc object or create a new one

Synopsis

```
int ipcget_public (struct ipc_namespace * ns, struct ipc_ids * ids,
const struct ipc_ops * ops, struct ipc_params * params);
```

Arguments

ns ipc namespace

ids ipc identifier set

ops the actual creation routine to call

params its parameters

Description

This routine is called by sys_msgget, `sys_semget` and `sys_shmget` when the key is not IPC_PRIVATE. It adds a new entry if the key is not found and does some permission / security checkings if the key is found.

On success, the ipc id is returned.

Name

ipc_rmid — remove an ipc identifier

Synopsis

```
void ipc_rmid (struct ipc_ids * ids, struct kern_ipc_perm * ipcp);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

ipcp ipc perm structure containing the identifier to remove

Description

ipc_ids.rwsem (as a writer) and the spinlock for this ID are held before this function is called, and remain locked on the exit.

Name

ipc_alloc — allocate ipc space

Synopsis

```
void * ipc_alloc (int size);
```

Arguments

size size desired

Description

Allocate memory from the appropriate pools and return a pointer to it. NULL is returned if the allocation fails

Name

ipc_free — free ipc space

Synopsis

```
void ipc_free (void * ptr, int size);
```

Arguments

ptr pointer returned by ipc_alloc

size size of block

Description

Free a block created with `ipc_alloc`. The caller must know the size used in the allocation call.

Name

ipc_rcu_alloc — allocate ipc and rcu space

Synopsis

```
void * ipc_rcu_alloc (int size);
```

Arguments

size size desired

Description

Allocate memory for the rcu header structure + the object. Returns the pointer to the object or NULL upon failure.

Name

ipcperms — check ipc permissions

Synopsis

```
int ipcperms (struct ipc_namespace * ns, struct kern_ipc_perm * ipcp,
short flag);
```

Arguments

ns ipc namespace

ipcp ipc permission set

flag desired permission set

Description

Check user, group, other permissions for access to ipc resources. return 0 if allowed

flag will most probably be 0 or S_...UGO from <linux/stat.h>

Name

kernel_to_ipc64_perm — convert kernel ipc permissions to user

Synopsis

```
void kernel_to_ipc64_perm (struct kern_ipc_perm * in, struct ipc64_perm
* out);
```

Arguments

in kernel permissions

out new style ipc permissions

Description

Turn the kernel object *in* into a set of permissions descriptions for returning to userspace (*out*).

Name

ipc64_perm_to_ipc_perm — convert new ipc permissions to old

Synopsis

```
void ipc64_perm_to_ipc_perm (struct ipc64_perm * in, struct ipc_perm
* out);
```

Arguments

in new style ipc permissions

out old style ipc permissions

Description

Turn the new style permissions object *in* into a compatibility object and store it into the *out* pointer.

Name

ipc_obtain_object_idr —

Synopsis

```
struct kern_ipc_perm * ipc_obtain_object_idr (struct ipc_ids * ids, int
id);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

id ipc id to look for

Description

Look for an id in the ipc ids idr and return associated ipc object.

Call inside the RCU critical section. The ipc object is *not* locked on exit.

Name

ipc_lock — lock an ipc structure without rwsem held

Synopsis

```
struct kern_ipc_perm * ipc_lock (struct ipc_ids * ids, int id);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

id ipc id to look for

Description

Look for an id in the ipc ids idr and lock the associated ipc object.

The ipc object is locked on successful exit.

Name

ipc_obtain_object_check —

Synopsis

```
struct kern_ipc_perm * ipc_obtain_object_check (struct ipc_ids * ids,
int id);
```

Arguments

ids ipc identifier set

id ipc id to look for

Description

Similar to `ipc_obtain_object_idr` but also checks the ipc object reference counter.

Call inside the RCU critical section. The ipc object is *not* locked on exit.

Name

ipcget — Common sys_*get code

Synopsis

```
int ipcget (struct ipc_namespace * ns, struct ipc_ids * ids, const
struct ipc_ops * ops, struct ipc_params * params);
```

Arguments

ns namespace

ids ipc identifier set

ops operations to be called on ipc object creation, permission checks and further checks

params the parameters needed by the previous operations.

Description

Common routine called by sys_msgget, sys_semget and sys_shmget.

Name

ipc_update_perm — update the permissions of an ipc object

Synopsis

```
int ipc_update_perm (struct ipc64_perm * in, struct kern_ipc_perm *
out);
```

Arguments

in the permission given as input.

out the permission of the ipc to set.

Name

ipcctl_pre_down_nolock — retrieve an ipc and check permissions for some IPC_XXX cmd

Synopsis

```
struct kern_ipc_perm * ipcctl_pre_down_nolock (struct ipc_namespace *
ns, struct ipc_ids * ids, int id, int cmd, struct ipc64_perm * perm,
int extra_perm);
```

Arguments

ns	ipc namespace
ids	the table of ids where to look for the ipc
id	the id of the ipc to retrieve
cmd	the cmd to check
perm	the permission to set
extra_perm	one extra permission parameter used by msq

Description

This function does some common audit and permissions check for some IPC_XXX cmd and is called from semctl_down, shmctl_down and msgctl_down. It must be called without any lock held and - retrieves the ipc with the given id in the given table. - performs some audit and permission check, depending on the given cmd - returns a pointer to the ipc object or otherwise, the corresponding error.

Call holding the both the rwsem and the rcu read lock.

Name

ipc_parse_version — ipc call version

Synopsis

```
int ipc_parse_version (int * cmd);
```

Arguments

cmd pointer to command

Description

Return IPC_64 for new style IPC and IPC_OLD for old style IPC. The *cmd* value is turned from an encoding command and version into just the command code.

Chapter 6. FIFO Buffer

kfifo interface

Name

DECLARE_KFIFO_PTR — macro to declare a fifo pointer object

Synopsis

```
DECLARE_KFIFO_PTR ( fifo, type);
```

Arguments

fifo name of the declared fifo

type type of the fifo elements

Name

DECLARE_KFIFO — macro to declare a fifo object

Synopsis

```
DECLARE_KFIFO ( fifo, type, size);
```

Arguments

fifo name of the declared fifo

type type of the fifo elements

size the number of elements in the fifo, this must be a power of 2

Name

INIT_KFIFO — Initialize a fifo declared by DECLARE_KFIFO

Synopsis

```
INIT_KFIFO ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo name of the declared fifo datatype

Name

DEFINE_KFIFO — macro to define and initialize a fifo

Synopsis

```
DEFINE_KFIFO ( fifo, type, size);
```

Arguments

fifo name of the declared fifo datatype

type type of the fifo elements

size the number of elements in the fifo, this must be a power of 2

Note

the macro can be used for global and local fifo data type variables.

Name

kfifo_initialized — Check if the fifo is initialized

Synopsis

```
kfifo_initialized ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to check

Description

Return `true` if fifo is initialized, otherwise `false`. Assumes the fifo was 0 before.

Name

kfifo_esize — returns the size of the element managed by the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_esize ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_recsize — returns the size of the record length field

Synopsis

```
kfifo_recsize ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_size — returns the size of the fifo in elements

Synopsis

```
kfifo_size ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_reset — removes the entire fifo content

Synopsis

```
kfifo_reset ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Note

usage of `kfifo_reset` is dangerous. It should be only called when the fifo is exclusived locked or when it is secured that no other thread is accessing the fifo.

Name

kfifo_reset_out — skip fifo content

Synopsis

```
kfifo_reset_out ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Note

The usage of `kfifo_reset_out` is safe until it will be only called from the reader thread and there is only one concurrent reader. Otherwise it is dangerous and must be handled in the same way as `kfifo_reset`.

Name

kfifo_len — returns the number of used elements in the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_len ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_is_empty — returns true if the fifo is empty

Synopsis

```
kfifo_is_empty ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_is_full — returns true if the fifo is full

Synopsis

```
kfifo_is_full ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_avail — returns the number of unused elements in the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_avail ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_skip — skip output data

Synopsis

```
kfifo_skip ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Name

kfifo_peek_len — gets the size of the next fifo record

Synopsis

```
kfifo_peek_len ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

Description

This function returns the size of the next fifo record in number of bytes.

Name

kfifo_alloc — dynamically allocates a new fifo buffer

Synopsis

```
kfifo_alloc ( fifo, size, gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

fifo	pointer to the fifo
size	the number of elements in the fifo, this must be a power of 2
gfp_mask	get_free_pages mask, passed to kmalloc

Description

This macro dynamically allocates a new fifo buffer.

The numer of elements will be rounded-up to a power of 2. The fifo will be release with kfifo_free. Return 0 if no error, otherwise an error code.

Name

kfifo_free — frees the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_free ( fifo);
```

Arguments

fifo the fifo to be freed

Name

kfifo_init — initialize a fifo using a preallocated buffer

Synopsis

```
kfifo_init ( fifo, buffer, size);
```

Arguments

fifo the fifo to assign the buffer

buffer the preallocated buffer to be used

size the size of the internal buffer, this have to be a power of 2

Description

This macro initialize a fifo using a preallocated buffer.

The numer of elements will be rounded-up to a power of 2. Return 0 if no error, otherwise an error code.

Name

kfifo_put — put data into the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_put ( fifo, val);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

val the data to be added

Description

This macro copies the given value into the fifo. It returns 0 if the fifo was full. Otherwise it returns the number processed elements.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_get — get data from the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_get ( fifo, val);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

val address where to store the data

Description

This macro reads the data from the fifo. It returns 0 if the fifo was empty. Otherwise it returns the number processed elements.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_peek — get data from the fifo without removing

Synopsis

```
kfifo_peek ( fifo, val);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

val address where to store the data

Description

This reads the data from the fifo without removing it from the fifo. It returns 0 if the fifo was empty. Otherwise it returns the number processed elements.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_in — put data into the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_in ( fifo, buf, n);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

buf the data to be added

n number of elements to be added

Description

This macro copies the given buffer into the fifo and returns the number of copied elements.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_in_spinlocked — put data into the fifo using a spinlock for locking

Synopsis

```
kfifo_in_spinlocked ( fifo, buf, n, lock);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

buf the data to be added

n number of elements to be added

lock pointer to the spinlock to use for locking

Description

This macro copies the given values buffer into the fifo and returns the number of copied elements.

Name

kfifo_out — get data from the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_out ( fifo, buf, n);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

buf pointer to the storage buffer

n max. number of elements to get

Description

This macro get some data from the fifo and return the numbers of elements copied.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_out_spinlocked — get data from the fifo using a spinlock for locking

Synopsis

```
kfifo_out_spinlocked ( fifo, buf, n, lock);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

buf pointer to the storage buffer

n max. number of elements to get

lock pointer to the spinlock to use for locking

Description

This macro get the data from the fifo and return the numbers of elements copied.

Name

kfifo_from_user — puts some data from user space into the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_from_user ( fifo, from, len, copied);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

from pointer to the data to be added

len the length of the data to be added

copied pointer to output variable to store the number of copied bytes

Description

This macro copies at most *len* bytes from the *from* into the fifo, depending of the available space and returns -EFAULT/0.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_to_user — copies data from the fifo into user space

Synopsis

```
kfifo_to_user ( fifo, to, len, copied);
```

Arguments

fifo	address of the fifo to be used
to	where the data must be copied
len	the size of the destination buffer
copied	pointer to output variable to store the number of copied bytes

Description

This macro copies at most *len* bytes from the fifo into the *to* buffer and returns -EFAULT/0.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Name

kfifo_dma_in_prepare — setup a scatterlist for DMA input

Synopsis

```
kfifo_dma_in_prepare ( fifo, sgl, nents, len);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

sgl pointer to the scatterlist array

nents number of entries in the scatterlist array

len number of elements to transfer

Description

This macro fills a scatterlist for DMA input. It returns the number entries in the scatterlist array.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macros.

Name

kfifo_dma_in_finish — finish a DMA IN operation

Synopsis

```
kfifo_dma_in_finish ( fifo, len);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

len number of bytes to received

Description

This macro finish a DMA IN operation. The in counter will be updated by the len parameter. No error checking will be done.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macros.

Name

kfifo_dma_out_prepare — setup a scatterlist for DMA output

Synopsis

```
kfifo_dma_out_prepare ( fifo, sgl, nents, len);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

sgl pointer to the scatterlist array

nents number of entries in the scatterlist array

len number of elements to transfer

Description

This macro fills a scatterlist for DMA output which at most *len* bytes to transfer. It returns the number entries in the scatterlist array. A zero means there is no space available and the scatterlist is not filled.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macros.

Name

kfifo_dma_out_finish — finish a DMA OUT operation

Synopsis

```
kfifo_dma_out_finish ( fifo, len);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

len number of bytes transferred

Description

This macro finish a DMA OUT operation. The out counter will be updated by the len parameter. No error checking will be done.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macros.

Name

kfifo_out_peek — gets some data from the fifo

Synopsis

```
kfifo_out_peek ( fifo, buf, n);
```

Arguments

fifo address of the fifo to be used

buf pointer to the storage buffer

n max. number of elements to get

Description

This macro get the data from the fifo and return the numbers of elements copied. The data is not removed from the fifo.

Note that with only one concurrent reader and one concurrent writer, you don't need extra locking to use these macro.

Chapter 7. relay interface support

Relay interface support is designed to provide an efficient mechanism for tools and facilities to relay large amounts of data from kernel space to user space.

relay interface

Name

relay_buf_full — boolean, is the channel buffer full?

Synopsis

```
int relay_buf_full (struct rchan_buf * buf);
```

Arguments

buf channel buffer

Description

Returns 1 if the buffer is full, 0 otherwise.

Name

relay_reset — reset the channel

Synopsis

```
void relay_reset (struct rchan * chan);
```

Arguments

chan the channel

Description

This has the effect of erasing all data from all channel buffers and restarting the channel in its initial state. The buffers are not freed, so any mappings are still in effect.

NOTE. Care should be taken that the channel isn't actually being used by anything when this call is made.

Name

relay_open — create a new relay channel

Synopsis

```
struct rchan * relay_open (const char * base_filename, struct dentry
* parent, size_t subbuf_size, size_t n_subbufs, struct rchan_callbacks
* cb, void * private_data);
```

Arguments

base_filename	base name of files to create, NULL for buffering only
parent	dentry of parent directory, NULL for root directory or buffer
subbuf_size	size of sub-buffers
n_subbufs	number of sub-buffers
cb	client callback functions
private_data	user-defined data

Description

Returns channel pointer if successful, NULL otherwise.

Creates a channel buffer for each cpu using the sizes and attributes specified. The created channel buffer files will be named base_filename0...base_filenameN-1. File permissions will be S_IRUSR.

Name

relay_switch_subbuf — switch to a new sub-buffer

Synopsis

```
size_t relay_switch_subbuf (struct rchan_buf * buf, size_t length);
```

Arguments

buf channel buffer

length size of current event

Description

Returns either the length passed in or 0 if full.

Performs sub-buffer-switch tasks such as invoking callbacks, updating padding counts, waking up readers, etc.

Name

relay_subbufs_consumed — update the buffer's sub-buffers-consumed count

Synopsis

```
void relay_subbufs_consumed (struct rchan * chan, unsigned int cpu,
size_t subbufs_consumed);
```

Arguments

chan	the channel
cpu	the cpu associated with the channel buffer to update
subbufs_consumed	number of sub-buffers to add to current buf's count

Description

Adds to the channel buffer's consumed sub-buffer count. subbufs_consumed should be the number of sub-buffers newly consumed, not the total consumed.

NOTE. Kernel clients don't need to call this function if the channel mode is 'overwrite'.

Name

relay_close — close the channel

Synopsis

```
void relay_close (struct rchan * chan);
```

Arguments

chan the channel

Description

Closes all channel buffers and frees the channel.

Name

relay_flush — close the channel

Synopsis

```
void relay_flush (struct rchan * chan);
```

Arguments

chan the channel

Description

Flushes all channel buffers, i.e. forces buffer switch.

Name

relay_mmap_buf — mmap channel buffer to process address space

Synopsis

```
int relay_mmap_buf (struct rchan_buf * buf, struct vm_area_struct *
vma);
```

Arguments

buf relay channel buffer

vma vm_area_struct describing memory to be mapped

Description

Returns 0 if ok, negative on error

Caller should already have grabbed mmap_sem.

Name

relay_alloc_buf — allocate a channel buffer

Synopsis

```
void * relay_alloc_buf (struct rchan_buf * buf, size_t * size);
```

Arguments

buf the buffer struct

size total size of the buffer

Description

Returns a pointer to the resulting buffer, NULL if unsuccessful. The passed in size will get page aligned, if it isn't already.

Name

relay_create_buf — allocate and initialize a channel buffer

Synopsis

```
struct rchan_buf * relay_create_buf (struct rchan * chan);
```

Arguments

chan the relay channel

Description

Returns channel buffer if successful, NULL otherwise.

Name

relay_destroy_channel — free the channel struct

Synopsis

```
void relay_destroy_channel (struct kref * kref);
```

Arguments

kref target kernel reference that contains the relay channel

Description

Should only be called from `kref_put`.

Name

relay_destroy_buf — destroy an rchan_buf struct and associated buffer

Synopsis

```
void relay_destroy_buf (struct rchan_buf * buf);
```

Arguments

buf the buffer struct

Name

relay_remove_buf — remove a channel buffer

Synopsis

```
void relay_remove_buf (struct kref * kref);
```

Arguments

kref target kernel reference that contains the relay buffer

Description

Removes the file from the filesystem, which also frees the rchan_buf_struct and the channel buffer. Should only be called from `kref_put`.

Name

relay_buf_empty — boolean, is the channel buffer empty?

Synopsis

```
int relay_buf_empty (struct rchan_buf * buf);
```

Arguments

buf channel buffer

Description

Returns 1 if the buffer is empty, 0 otherwise.

Name

wakeup_readers — wake up readers waiting on a channel

Synopsis

```
void wakeup_readers (unsigned long data);
```

Arguments

data contains the channel buffer

Description

This is the timer function used to defer reader waking.

Name

__relay_reset — reset a channel buffer

Synopsis

```
void __relay_reset (struct rchan_buf * buf, unsigned int init);
```

Arguments

buf the channel buffer

init 1 if this is a first-time initialization

Description

See `relay_reset` for description of effect.

Name

relay_close_buf — close a channel buffer

Synopsis

```
void relay_close_buf (struct rchan_buf * buf);
```

Arguments

buf channel buffer

Description

Marks the buffer finalized and restores the default callbacks. The channel buffer and channel buffer data structure are then freed automatically when the last reference is given up.

Name

relay_hotcpu_callback — CPU hotplug callback

Synopsis

```
int relay_hotcpu_callback (struct notifier_block * nb, unsigned long
action, void * hcpu);
```

Arguments

nb notifier block

action hotplug action to take

hcpu CPU number

Description

Returns the success/failure of the operation. (NOTIFY_OK, NOTIFY_BAD)

Name

relay_late_setup_files — triggers file creation

Synopsis

```
int relay_late_setup_files (struct rchan * chan, const char *
base_filename, struct dentry * parent);
```

Arguments

chan	channel to operate on
base_filename	base name of files to create
parent	dentry of parent directory, NULL for root directory

Description

Returns 0 if successful, non-zero otherwise.

Use to setup files for a previously buffer-only channel. Useful to do early tracing in kernel, before VFS is up, for example.

Name

relay_file_open — open file op for relay files

Synopsis

```
int relay_file_open (struct inode * inode, struct file * filp);
```

Arguments

inode the inode

filp the file

Description

Increments the channel buffer refcount.

Name

relay_file_mmap — mmap file op for relay files

Synopsis

```
int relay_file_mmap (struct file * filp, struct vm_area_struct * vma);
```

Arguments

filp the file

vma the vma describing what to map

Description

Calls upon `relay_mmap_buf` to map the file into user space.

Name

relay_file_poll — poll file op for relay files

Synopsis

```
unsigned int relay_file_poll (struct file * filp, poll_table * wait);
```

Arguments

filp the file

wait poll table

Description

Poll implemention.

Name

relay_file_release — release file op for relay files

Synopsis

```
int relay_file_release (struct inode * inode, struct file * filp);
```

Arguments

inode the inode

filp the file

Description

Decrements the channel refcount, as the filesystem is no longer using it.

Name

relay_file_read_subbuf_avail — return bytes available in sub-buffer

Synopsis

```
size_t relay_file_read_subbuf_avail (size_t read_pos, struct rchan_buf
* buf);
```

Arguments

read_pos file read position

buf relay channel buffer

Name

relay_file_read_start_pos — find the first available byte to read

Synopsis

```
size_t relay_file_read_start_pos (size_t read_pos, struct rchan_buf *
buf);
```

Arguments

read_pos file read position

buf relay channel buffer

Description

If the *read_pos* is in the middle of padding, return the position of the first actually available byte, otherwise return the original value.

Name

relay_file_read_end_pos — return the new read position

Synopsis

```
size_t relay_file_read_end_pos (struct rchan_buf * buf, size_t read_pos,
size_t count);
```

Arguments

buf	relay channel buffer
read_pos	file read position
count	number of bytes to be read

Chapter 8. Module Support

Module Loading

Name

__request_module — try to load a kernel module

Synopsis

```
int __request_module (bool wait, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

wait wait (or not) for the operation to complete

fmt printf style format string for the name of the module @...: arguments as specified in the format string

... variable arguments

Description

Load a module using the user mode module loader. The function returns zero on success or a negative errno code or positive exit code from “modprobe” on failure. Note that a successful module load does not mean the module did not then unload and exit on an error of its own. Callers must check that the service they requested is now available not blindly invoke it.

If module auto-loading support is disabled then this function becomes a no-operation.

Name

call_usermodehelper_setup — prepare to call a usermode helper

Synopsis

```
struct subprocess_info * call_usermodehelper_setup (char * path, char ** argv, char ** envp, gfp_t gfp_mask, int (*init) (struct subprocess_info *info, struct cred *new), void (*cleanup) (struct subprocess_info *info), void * data);
```

Arguments

path	path to usermode executable
argv	arg vector for process
envp	environment for process
gfp_mask	gfp mask for memory allocation
init	an init function
cleanup	a cleanup function
data	arbitrary context sensitive data

Description

Returns either NULL on allocation failure, or a subprocess_info structure. This should be passed to call_usermodehelper_exec to exec the process and free the structure.

The init function is used to customize the helper process prior to exec. A non-zero return code causes the process to error out, exit, and return the failure to the calling process

The cleanup function is just before ethe subprocess_info is about to be freed. This can be used for freeing the argv and envp. The Function must be runnable in either a process context or the context in which call_usermodehelper_exec is called.

Name

call_usermodehelper_exec — start a usermode application

Synopsis

```
int call_usermodehelper_exec (struct subprocess_info * sub_info, int wait);
```

Arguments

sub_info information about the subprocessa

wait wait for the application to finish and return status. when UMH_NO_WAIT don't wait at all, but you get no useful error back when the program couldn't be exec'ed. This makes it safe to call from interrupt context.

Description

Runs a user-space application. The application is started asynchronously if wait is not set, and runs as a child of system workqueues. (ie. it runs with full root capabilities and optimized affinity).

Name

call_usermodehelper — prepare and start a usermode application

Synopsis

```
int call_usermodehelper (char * path, char ** argv, char ** envp, int wait);
```

Arguments

path path to usermode executable

argv arg vector for process

envp environment for process

wait wait for the application to finish and return status. when UMH_NO_WAIT don't wait at all, but you get no useful error back when the program couldn't be exec'ed. This makes it safe to call from interrupt context.

Description

This function is the equivalent to use `call_usermodehelper_setup` and `call_usermodehelper_exec`.

Inter Module support

Refer to the file kernel/module.c for more information.

Chapter 9. Hardware Interfaces

Interrupt Handling

Name

synchronize_hardirq — wait for pending hard IRQ handlers (on other CPUs)

Synopsis

```
bool synchronize_hardirq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq interrupt number to wait for

Description

This function waits for any pending hard IRQ handlers for this interrupt to complete before returning. If you use this function while holding a resource the IRQ handler may need you will deadlock. It does not take associated threaded handlers into account.

Do not use this for shutdown scenarios where you must be sure that all parts (hardirq and threaded handler) have completed.

Returns

false if a threaded handler is active.

This function may be called - with care - from IRQ context.

Name

synchronize_irq — wait for pending IRQ handlers (on other CPUs)

Synopsis

```
void synchronize_irq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq interrupt number to wait for

Description

This function waits for any pending IRQ handlers for this interrupt to complete before returning. If you use this function while holding a resource the IRQ handler may need you will deadlock.

This function may be called - with care - from IRQ context.

Name

irq_set_affinity_notifier — control notification of IRQ affinity changes

Synopsis

```
int irq_set_affinity_notifier (unsigned int irq, struct
irq_affinity_notify * notify);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt for which to enable/disable notification

notify Context for notification, or NULL to disable notification. Function pointers must be initialised; the other fields will be initialised by this function.

Description

Must be called in process context. Notification may only be enabled after the IRQ is allocated and must be disabled before the IRQ is freed using free_irq.

Name

irq_set_vcpu_affinity — Set vcpu affinity for the interrupt

Synopsis

```
int irq_set_vcpu_affinity (unsigned int irq, void * vcpu_info);
```

Arguments

irq	interrupt number to set affinity
vcpu_info	vCPU specific data

Description

This function uses the vCPU specific data to set the vCPU affinity for an irq. The vCPU specific data is passed from outside, such as KVM. One example code path is as below: KVM -> IOMMU -> `irq_set_vcpu_affinity`.

Name

disable_irq_nosync — disable an irq without waiting

Synopsis

```
void disable_irq_nosync (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt to disable

Description

Disable the selected interrupt line. Disables and Enables are nested. Unlike `disable_irq`, this function does not ensure existing instances of the IRQ handler have completed before returning.

This function may be called from IRQ context.

Name

disable_irq — disable an irq and wait for completion

Synopsis

```
void disable_irq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt to disable

Description

Disable the selected interrupt line. Enables and Disables are nested. This function waits for any pending IRQ handlers for this interrupt to complete before returning. If you use this function while holding a resource the IRQ handler may need you will deadlock.

This function may be called - with care - from IRQ context.

Name

disable_hardirq — disables an irq and waits for hardirq completion

Synopsis

```
bool disable_hardirq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt to disable

Description

Disable the selected interrupt line. Enables and Disables are nested. This function waits for any pending hard IRQ handlers for this interrupt to complete before returning. If you use this function while holding a resource the hard IRQ handler may need you will deadlock.

When used to optimistically disable an interrupt from atomic context the return value must be checked.

Returns

false if a threaded handler is active.

This function may be called - with care - from IRQ context.

Name

enable_irq — enable handling of an irq

Synopsis

```
void enable_irq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt to enable

Description

Undoes the effect of one call to `disable_irq`. If this matches the last disable, processing of interrupts on this IRQ line is re-enabled.

This function may be called from IRQ context only when desc->irq_data.chip->bus_lock and desc->chip->bus_sync_unlock are NULL !

Name

irq_set_irq_wake — control irq power management wakeup

Synopsis

```
int irq_set_irq_wake (unsigned int irq, unsigned int on);
```

Arguments

irq interrupt to control

on enable/disable power management wakeup

Description

Enable/disable power management wakeup mode, which is disabled by default. Enables and disables must match, just as they match for non-wakeup mode support.

Wakeup mode lets this IRQ wake the system from sleep states like “suspend to RAM”.

Name

irq_wake_thread — wake the irq thread for the action identified by dev_id

Synopsis

```
void irq_wake_thread (unsigned int irq, void * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line

dev_id Device identity for which the thread should be woken

Name

setup_irq — setup an interrupt

Synopsis

```
int setup_irq (unsigned int irq, struct irqaction * act);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to setup

act irqaction for the interrupt

Description

Used to statically setup interrupts in the early boot process.

Name

remove_irq — free an interrupt

Synopsis

```
void remove_irq (unsigned int irq, struct irqaction * act);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to free

act irqaction for the interrupt

Description

Used to remove interrupts statically setup by the early boot process.

Name

free_irq — free an interrupt allocated with request_irq

Synopsis

```
void free_irq (unsigned int irq, void * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to free

dev_id Device identity to free

Description

Remove an interrupt handler. The handler is removed and if the interrupt line is no longer in use by any driver it is disabled. On a shared IRQ the caller must ensure the interrupt is disabled on the card it drives before calling this function. The function does not return until any executing interrupts for this IRQ have completed.

This function must not be called from interrupt context.

Name

request_threaded_irq — allocate an interrupt line

Synopsis

```
int request_threaded_irq (unsigned int irq, irq_handler_t handler,
irq_handler_t thread_fn, unsigned long irqflags, const char * devname,
void * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq	Interrupt line to allocate
handler	Function to be called when the IRQ occurs. Primary handler for threaded interrupts If NULL and thread_fn != NULL the default primary handler is installed
thread_fn	Function called from the irq handler thread If NULL, no irq thread is created
irqflags	Interrupt type flags
devname	An ascii name for the claiming device
dev_id	A cookie passed back to the handler function

Description

This call allocates interrupt resources and enables the interrupt line and IRQ handling. From the point this call is made your handler function may be invoked. Since your handler function must clear any interrupt the board raises, you must take care both to initialise your hardware and to set up the interrupt handler in the right order.

If you want to set up a threaded irq handler for your device then you need to supply *handler* and *thread_fn*. *handler* is still called in hard interrupt context and has to check whether the interrupt originates from the device. If yes it needs to disable the interrupt on the device and return IRQ_WAKE_THREAD which will wake up the handler thread and run *thread_fn*. This split handler design is necessary to support shared interrupts.

Dev_id must be globally unique. Normally the address of the device data structure is used as the cookie. Since the handler receives this value it makes sense to use it.

If your interrupt is shared you must pass a non NULL dev_id as this is required when freeing the interrupt.

Flags

IRQF_SHARED Interrupt is shared IRQF_TRIGGER_* Specify active edge(s) or level

Name

request_any_context_irq — allocate an interrupt line

Synopsis

```
int request_any_context_irq (unsigned int irq, irq_handler_t handler,
unsigned long flags, const char * name, void * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to allocate

handler Function to be called when the IRQ occurs. Threaded handler for threaded interrupts.

flags Interrupt type flags

name An ascii name for the claiming device

dev_id A cookie passed back to the handler function

Description

This call allocates interrupt resources and enables the interrupt line and IRQ handling. It selects either a hardirq or threaded handling method depending on the context.

On failure, it returns a negative value. On success, it returns either IRQC_IS_HARDIRQ or IRQC_IS_NESTED.

Name

free_percpu_irq — free an interrupt allocated with request_percpu_irq

Synopsis

```
void free_percpu_irq (unsigned int irq, void __percpu * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to free

dev_id Device identity to free

Description

Remove a percpu interrupt handler. The handler is removed, but the interrupt line is not disabled. This must be done on each CPU before calling this function. The function does not return until any executing interrupts for this IRQ have completed.

This function must not be called from interrupt context.

Name

request_percpu_irq — allocate a percpu interrupt line

Synopsis

```
int request_percpu_irq (unsigned int irq, irq_handler_t handler, const
char * devname, void __percpu * dev_id);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line to allocate

handler Function to be called when the IRQ occurs.

devname An ascii name for the claiming device

dev_id A percpu cookie passed back to the handler function

Description

This call allocates interrupt resources and enables the interrupt on the local CPU. If the interrupt is supposed to be enabled on other CPUs, it has to be done on each CPU using `enable_percpu_irq`.

Dev_id must be globally unique. It is a per-cpu variable, and the handler gets called with the interrupted CPU's instance of that variable.

Name

irq_get_irqchip_state — returns the irqchip state of a interrupt.

Synopsis

```
int irq_get_irqchip_state (unsigned int irq, enum irqchip_irq_state which, bool * state);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line that is forwarded to a VM

which One of IRQCHIP_STATE_* the caller wants to know about

state a pointer to a boolean where the state is to be storeed

Description

This call snapshots the internal irqchip state of an interrupt, returning into *state* the bit corresponding to stage *which*

This function should be called with preemption disabled if the interrupt controller has per-cpu registers.

Name

irq_set_irqchip_state — set the state of a forwarded interrupt.

Synopsis

```
int irq_set_irqchip_state (unsigned int irq, enum irqchip_irq_state which, bool val);
```

Arguments

irq Interrupt line that is forwarded to a VM

which State to be restored (one of IRQCHIP_STATE_*)

val Value corresponding to *which*

Description

This call sets the internal irqchip state of an interrupt, depending on the value of *which*.

This function should be called with preemption disabled if the interrupt controller has per-cpu registers.

DMA Channels

Name

request_dma — request and reserve a system DMA channel

Synopsis

```
int request_dma (unsigned int dmanr, const char * device_id);
```

Arguments

dmanr DMA channel number

device_id reserving device ID string, used in /proc/dma

Name

free_dma — free a reserved system DMA channel

Synopsis

```
void free_dma (unsigned int dmanr);
```

Arguments

dmanr DMA channel number

Resources Management

Name

request_resource_conflict — request and reserve an I/O or memory resource

Synopsis

```
struct resource * request_resource_conflict (struct resource * root,
struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

root root resource descriptor

new resource descriptor desired by caller

Description

Returns 0 for success, conflict resource on error.

Name

reallocate_resource — allocate a slot in the resource tree given range & alignment. The resource will be relocated if the new size cannot be reallocated in the current location.

Synopsis

```
int reallocate_resource (struct resource * root, struct resource * old,
resource_size_t newsize, struct resource_constraint * constraint);
```

Arguments

root	root resource descriptor
old	resource descriptor desired by caller
newsize	new size of the resource descriptor
constraint	the size and alignment constraints to be met.

Name

lookup_resource — find an existing resource by a resource start address

Synopsis

```
struct resource * lookup_resource (struct resource * root,
resource_size_t start);
```

Arguments

root root resource descriptor

start resource start address

Description

Returns a pointer to the resource if found, NULL otherwise

Name

insert_resource_conflict — Inserts resource in the resource tree

Synopsis

```
struct resource * insert_resource_conflict (struct resource * parent,
struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

parent parent of the new resource

new new resource to insert

Description

Returns 0 on success, conflict resource if the resource can't be inserted.

This function is equivalent to request_resource_conflict when no conflict happens. If a conflict happens, and the conflicting resources entirely fit within the range of the new resource, then the new resource is inserted and the conflicting resources become children of the new resource.

This function is intended for producers of resources, such as FW modules and bus drivers.

Name

insert_resource_expand_to_fit — Insert a resource into the resource tree

Synopsis

```
void insert_resource_expand_to_fit (struct resource * root, struct re-
source * new);
```

Arguments

root root resource descriptor

new new resource to insert

Description

Insert a resource into the resource tree, possibly expanding it in order to make it encompass any conflicting resources.

Name

resource_alignment — calculate resource's alignment

Synopsis

```
resource_size_t resource_alignment (struct resource * res);
```

Arguments

res resource pointer

Description

Returns alignment on success, 0 (invalid alignment) on failure.

Name

release_mem_region_adjustable — release a previously reserved memory region

Synopsis

```
int release_mem_region_adjustable (struct resource * parent, resource_size_t start, resource_size_t size);
```

Arguments

parent parent resource descriptor

start resource start address

size resource region size

Description

This interface is intended for memory hot-delete. The requested region is released from a currently busy memory resource. The requested region must either match exactly or fit into a single busy resource entry. In the latter case, the remaining resource is adjusted accordingly. Existing children of the busy memory resource must be immutable in the request.

Note

- Additional release conditions, such as overlapping region, can be supported after they are confirmed as valid cases. - When a busy memory resource gets split into two entries, the code assumes that all children remain in the lower address entry for simplicity. Enhance this logic when necessary.

Name

request_resource — request and reserve an I/O or memory resource

Synopsis

```
int request_resource (struct resource * root, struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

root root resource descriptor

new resource descriptor desired by caller

Description

Returns 0 for success, negative error code on error.

Name

release_resource — release a previously reserved resource

Synopsis

```
int release_resource (struct resource * old);
```

Arguments

old resource pointer

Name

region_intersects — determine intersection of region with known resources

Synopsis

```
int region_intersects (resource_size_t start, size_t size, unsigned long
flags, unsigned long desc);
```

Arguments

start region start address

size size of region

flags flags of resource (in iomem_resource)

desc descriptor of resource (in iomem_resource) or IORES_DESC_NONE

Description

Check if the specified region partially overlaps or fully eclipses a resource identified by *flags* and *desc* (optional with IORES_DESC_NONE). Return REGION_DISJOINT if the region does not overlap *flags*/*desc*, return REGION_MIXED if the region overlaps *flags*/*desc* and another resource, and return REGION_INTERSECTS if the region overlaps *flags*/*desc* and no other defined resource. Note that REGION_INTERSECTS is also returned in the case when the specified region overlaps RAM and undefined memory holes.

region_intersect is used by memory remapping functions to ensure the user is not remapping RAM and is a vast speed up over walking through the resource table page by page.

Name

allocate_resource — allocate empty slot in the resource tree given range & alignment. The resource will be reallocated with a new size if it was already allocated

Synopsis

```
int allocate_resource (struct resource * root, struct resource * new, resource_size_t size, resource_size_t min, resource_size_t max, resource_size_t align, resource_size_t (*alignf) (void *, const struct resource *, resource_size_t, resource_size_t), void * alignf_data);
```

Arguments

root	root resource descriptor
new	resource descriptor desired by caller
size	requested resource region size
min	minimum boundary to allocate
max	maximum boundary to allocate
align	alignment requested, in bytes
alignf	alignment function, optional, called if not NULL
alignf_data	arbitrary data to pass to the *alignf* function

Name

insert_resource — Inserts a resource in the resource tree

Synopsis

```
int insert_resource (struct resource * parent, struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

parent parent of the new resource

new new resource to insert

Description

Returns 0 on success, -EBUSY if the resource can't be inserted.

This function is intended for producers of resources, such as FW modules and bus drivers.

Name

remove_resource — Remove a resource in the resource tree

Synopsis

```
int remove_resource (struct resource * old);
```

Arguments

old resource to remove

Description

Returns 0 on success, -EINVAL if the resource is not valid.

This function removes a resource previously inserted by `insert_resource` or `insert_resource_conflict`, and moves the children (if any) up to where they were before. `insert_resource` and `insert_resource_conflict` insert a new resource, and move any conflicting resources down to the children of the new resource.

`insert_resource`, `insert_resource_conflict` and `remove_resource` are intended for producers of resources, such as FW modules and bus drivers.

Name

adjust_resource — modify a resource's start and size

Synopsis

```
int adjust_resource (struct resource * res, resource_size_t start,
resource_size_t size);
```

Arguments

res resource to modify

start new start value

size new size

Description

Given an existing resource, change its start and size to match the arguments. Returns 0 on success, -EBUSY if it can't fit. Existing children of the resource are assumed to be immutable.

Name

__request_region — create a new busy resource region

Synopsis

```
struct resource * __request_region (struct resource * parent,
resource_size_t start, resource_size_t n, const char * name, int flags);
```

Arguments

parent parent resource descriptor

start resource start address

n resource region size

name reserving caller's ID string

flags IO resource flags

Name

__release_region — release a previously reserved resource region

Synopsis

```
void __release_region (struct resource * parent, resource_size_t start,
resource_size_t n);
```

Arguments

parent parent resource descriptor

start resource start address

n resource region size

Description

The described resource region must match a currently busy region.

Name

devm_request_resource — request and reserve an I/O or memory resource

Synopsis

```
int devm_request_resource (struct device * dev, struct resource * root,
struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

dev device for which to request the resource

root root of the resource tree from which to request the resource

new descriptor of the resource to request

Description

This is a device-managed version of `request_resource`. There is usually no need to release resources requested by this function explicitly since that will be taken care of when the device is unbound from its driver. If for some reason the resource needs to be released explicitly, because of ordering issues for example, drivers must call `devm_release_resource` rather than the regular `release_resource`.

When a conflict is detected between any existing resources and the newly requested resource, an error message will be printed.

Returns 0 on success or a negative error code on failure.

Name

devm_release_resource — release a previously requested resource

Synopsis

```
void devm_release_resource (struct device * dev, struct resource * new);
```

Arguments

dev device for which to release the resource

new descriptor of the resource to release

Description

Releases a resource previously requested using `devm_request_resource`.

MTRR Handling

Name

arch_phys_wc_add — add a WC MTRR and handle errors if PAT is unavailable

Synopsis

```
int arch_phys_wc_add (unsigned long base, unsigned long size);
```

Arguments

base Physical base address

size Size of region

Description

If PAT is available, this does nothing. If PAT is unavailable, it attempts to add a WC MTRR covering size bytes starting at base and logs an error if this fails.

The called should provide a power of two size on an equivalent power of two boundary.

Drivers must store the return value to pass to mtrr_del_wc_if_needed, but drivers should not try to interpret that return value.

PCI Support Library

Name

pci_bus_max_busnr — returns maximum PCI bus number of given bus' children

Synopsis

```
unsigned char pci_bus_max_busnr (struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus pointer to PCI bus structure to search

Description

Given a PCI bus, returns the highest PCI bus number present in the set including the given PCI bus and its list of child PCI buses.

Name

pci_find_capability — query for devices' capabilities

Synopsis

```
int pci_find_capability (struct pci_dev * dev, int cap);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

cap capability code

Description

Tell if a device supports a given PCI capability. Returns the address of the requested capability structure within the device's PCI configuration space or 0 in case the device does not support it. Possible values for *cap*:

PCI_CAP_ID_PM Power Management PCI_CAP_ID_AGP Accelerated Graphics Port PCI_CAP_ID_VPD Vital Product Data PCI_CAP_ID_SLOTID Slot Identification PCI_CAP_ID_MSI Message Signalled Interrupts PCI_CAP_ID_CHSWP CompactPCI HotSwap PCI_CAP_ID_PCIX PCI-X PCI_CAP_ID_EXP PCI Express

Name

pci_bus_find_capability — query for devices' capabilities

Synopsis

```
int pci_bus_find_capability (struct pci_bus * bus, unsigned int devfn,
int cap);
```

Arguments

bus the PCI bus to query

devfn PCI device to query

cap capability code

Description

Like `pci_find_capability` but works for pci devices that do not have a pci_dev structure set up yet.

Returns the address of the requested capability structure within the device's PCI configuration space or 0 in case the device does not support it.

Name

pci_find_next_ext_capability — Find an extended capability

Synopsis

```
int pci_find_next_ext_capability (struct pci_dev * dev, int start, int cap);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

start address at which to start looking (0 to start at beginning of list)

cap capability code

Description

Returns the address of the next matching extended capability structure within the device's PCI configuration space or 0 if the device does not support it. Some capabilities can occur several times, e.g., the vendor-specific capability, and this provides a way to find them all.

Name

pci_find_ext_capability — Find an extended capability

Synopsis

```
int pci_find_ext_capability (struct pci_dev * dev, int cap);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

cap capability code

Description

Returns the address of the requested extended capability structure within the device's PCI configuration space or 0 if the device does not support it. Possible values for *cap*:

PCI_EXT_CAP_ID_ERR Advanced Error Reporting PCI_EXT_CAP_ID_VC Virtual Channel PCI_EXT_CAP_ID_DSN Device Serial Number PCI_EXT_CAP_ID_PWR Power Budgeting

Name

pci_find_next_ht_capability — query a device's Hypertransport capabilities

Synopsis

```
int pci_find_next_ht_capability (struct pci_dev * dev, int pos, int ht_cap);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

pos Position from which to continue searching

ht_cap Hypertransport capability code

Description

To be used in conjunction with `pci_find_ht_capability` to search for all capabilities matching *ht_cap*. *pos* should always be a value returned from `pci_find_ht_capability`.

NB. To be 100% safe against broken PCI devices, the caller should take steps to avoid an infinite loop.

Name

pci_find_ht_capability — query a device's Hypertransport capabilities

Synopsis

```
int pci_find_ht_capability (struct pci_dev * dev, int ht_cap);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

ht_cap Hypertransport capability code

Description

Tell if a device supports a given Hypertransport capability. Returns an address within the device's PCI configuration space or 0 in case the device does not support the request capability. The address points to the PCI capability, of type PCI_CAP_ID_HT, which has a Hypertransport capability matching *ht_cap*.

Name

pci_find_parent_resource — return resource region of parent bus of given region

Synopsis

```
struct resource * pci_find_parent_resource (const struct pci_dev * dev,
struct resource * res);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device structure contains resources to be searched

res child resource record for which parent is sought

Description

For given resource region of given device, return the resource region of parent bus the given region is contained in.

Name

pci_find_pcie_root_port — return PCIe Root Port

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_find_pcie_root_port (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

Description

Traverse up the parent chain and return the PCIe Root Port PCI Device for a given PCI Device.

Name

__pci_complete_power_transition — Complete power transition of a PCI device

Synopsis

```
int __pci_complete_power_transition (struct pci_dev * dev, pci_power_t state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to handle.

state State to put the device into.

Description

This function should not be called directly by device drivers.

Name

pci_set_power_state — Set the power state of a PCI device

Synopsis

```
int pci_set_power_state (struct pci_dev * dev, pci_power_t state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to handle.

state PCI power state (D0, D1, D2, D3hot) to put the device into.

Description

Transition a device to a new power state, using the platform firmware and/or the device's PCI PM registers.

RETURN VALUE

-EINVAL if the requested state is invalid. -EIO if device does not support PCI PM or its PM capabilities register has a wrong version, or device doesn't support the requested state. 0 if device already is in the requested state. 0 if device's power state has been successfully changed.

Name

pci_choose_state — Choose the power state of a PCI device

Synopsis

```
pci_power_t pci_choose_state (struct pci_dev * dev, pm_message_t state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be suspended

state target sleep state for the whole system. This is the value that is passed to `suspend` function.

Description

Returns PCI power state suitable for given device and given system message.

Name

pci_save_state — save the PCI configuration space of a device before suspending

Synopsis

```
int pci_save_state (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev - PCI device that we're dealing with

Name

pci_restore_state — Restore the saved state of a PCI device

Synopsis

```
void pci_restore_state (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev - PCI device that we're dealing with

Name

pci_store_saved_state — Allocate and return an opaque struct containing the device saved state.

Synopsis

```
struct pci_saved_state * pci_store_saved_state (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device that we're dealing with

Description

Return NULL if no state or error.

Name

pci_load_saved_state — Reload the provided save state into struct pci_dev.

Synopsis

```
int pci_load_saved_state (struct pci_dev * dev, struct pci_saved_state
* state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device that we're dealing with

state Saved state returned from `pci_store_saved_state`

Name

pci_load_and_free_saved_state — Reload the save state pointed to by state, and free the memory allocated for it.

Synopsis

```
int pci_load_and_free_saved_state (struct pci_dev * dev, struct pci_saved_state ** state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device that we're dealing with

state Pointer to saved state returned from `pci_store_saved_state`

Name

pci_reenable_device — Resume abandoned device

Synopsis

```
int pci_reenable_device (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be resumed

Description

Note this function is a backend of pci_default_resume and is not supposed to be called by normal code, write proper resume handler and use it instead.

Name

pci_enable_device_io — Initialize a device for use with IO space

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_device_io (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be initialized

Description

Initialize device before it's used by a driver. Ask low-level code to enable I/O resources. Wake up the device if it was suspended. Beware, this function can fail.

Name

pci_enable_device_mem — Initialize a device for use with Memory space

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_device_mem (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be initialized

Description

Initialize device before it's used by a driver. Ask low-level code to enable Memory resources. Wake up the device if it was suspended. Beware, this function can fail.

Name

pci_enable_device — Initialize device before it's used by a driver.

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_device (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be initialized

Description

Initialize device before it's used by a driver. Ask low-level code to enable I/O and memory. Wake up the device if it was suspended. Beware, this function can fail.

Note we don't actually enable the device many times if we call this function repeatedly (we just increment the count).

Name

pcim_enable_device — Managed `pci_enable_device`

Synopsis

```
int pcim_enable_device (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

`pdev` PCI device to be initialized

Description

Managed `pci_enable_device`.

Name

pcim_pin_device — Pin managed PCI device

Synopsis

```
void pcim_pin_device (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device to pin

Description

Pin managed PCI device *pdev*. Pinned device won't be disabled on driver detach. *pdev* must have been enabled with `pcim_enable_device`.

Name

pci_disable_device — Disable PCI device after use

Synopsis

```
void pci_disable_device (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to be disabled

Description

Signal to the system that the PCI device is not in use by the system anymore. This only involves disabling PCI bus-mastering, if active.

Note we don't actually disable the device until all callers of `pci_enable_device` have called `pci_disable_device`.

Name

pci_set_pcie_reset_state — set reset state for device dev

Synopsis

```
int pci_set_pcie_reset_state (struct pci_dev * dev, enum
pcie_reset_state state);
```

Arguments

dev the PCIe device reset

state Reset state to enter into

Description

Sets the PCI reset state for the device.

Name

pci_pme_capable — check the capability of PCI device to generate PME#

Synopsis

```
bool pci_pme_capable (struct pci_dev * dev, pci_power_t state);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to handle.

state PCI state from which device will issue PME#.

Name

pci_pme_active — enable or disable PCI device's PME# function

Synopsis

```
void pci_pme_active (struct pci_dev * dev, bool enable);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to handle.

enable 'true' to enable PME# generation; 'false' to disable it.

Description

The caller must verify that the device is capable of generating PME# before calling this function with *enable* equal to 'true'.

Name

__pci_enable_wake — enable PCI device as wakeup event source

Synopsis

```
int __pci_enable_wake (struct pci_dev * dev, pci_power_t state, bool runtime, bool enable);
```

Arguments

dev	PCI device affected
state	PCI state from which device will issue wakeup events
runtime	True if the events are to be generated at run time
enable	True to enable event generation; false to disable

Description

This enables the device as a wakeup event source, or disables it. When such events involves platform-specific hooks, those hooks are called automatically by this routine.

Devices with legacy power management (no standard PCI PM capabilities) always require such platform hooks.

RETURN VALUE

0 is returned on success -EINVAL is returned if device is not supposed to wake up the system Error code depending on the platform is returned if both the platform and the native mechanism fail to enable the generation of wake-up events

Name

pci_wake_from_d3 — enable/disable device to wake up from D3_hot or D3_cold

Synopsis

```
int pci_wake_from_d3 (struct pci_dev * dev, bool enable);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to prepare

enable True to enable wake-up event generation; false to disable

Description

Many drivers want the device to wake up the system from D3_hot or D3_cold and this function allows them to set that up cleanly - `pci_enable_wake` should not be called twice in a row to enable wake-up due to PCI PM vs ACPI ordering constraints.

This function only returns error code if the device is not capable of generating PME# from both D3_hot and D3_cold, and the platform is unable to enable wake-up power for it.

Name

pci_prepare_to_sleep — prepare PCI device for system-wide transition into a sleep state

Synopsis

```
int pci_prepare_to_sleep (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev Device to handle.

Description

Choose the power state appropriate for the device depending on whether it can wake up the system and/or is power manageable by the platform (PCI_D3hot is the default) and put the device into that state.

Name

pci_back_from_sleep — turn PCI device on during system-wide transition into working state

Synopsis

```
int pci_back_from_sleep (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev Device to handle.

Description

Disable device's system wake-up capability and put it into D0.

Name

pci_dev_run_wake — Check if device can generate run-time wake-up events.

Synopsis

```
bool pci_dev_run_wake (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev Device to check.

Description

Return true if the device itself is capable of generating wake-up events (through the platform or using the native PCIe PME) or if the device supports PME and one of its upstream bridges can generate wake-up events.

Name

pci_common_swizzle — swizzle INTx all the way to root bridge

Synopsis

```
u8 pci_common_swizzle (struct pci_dev * dev, u8 * pinp);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device

pinp pointer to the INTx pin value (1=INTA, 2=INTB, 3=INTD, 4=INTD)

Description

Perform INTx swizzling for a device. This traverses through all PCI-to-PCI bridges all the way up to a PCI root bus.

Name

pci_release_region — Release a PCI bar

Synopsis

```
void pci_release_region (struct pci_dev * pdev, int bar);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources were previously reserved by pci_request_region

bar BAR to release

Description

Releases the PCI I/O and memory resources previously reserved by a successful call to pci_request_region. Call this function only after all use of the PCI regions has ceased.

Name

pci_request_region — Reserve PCI I/O and memory resource

Synopsis

```
int pci_request_region (struct pci_dev * pdev, int bar, const char *
res_name);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources are to be reserved

bar BAR to be reserved

res_name Name to be associated with resource

Description

Mark the PCI region associated with PCI device *pdev* BAR *bar* as being reserved by owner *res_name*. Do not access any address inside the PCI regions unless this call returns successfully.

Returns 0 on success, or EBUSY on error. A warning message is also printed on failure.

Name

pci_request_region_exclusive — Reserved PCI I/O and memory resource

Synopsis

```
int pci_request_region_exclusive (struct pci_dev * pdev, int bar, const
char * res_name);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources are to be reserved

bar BAR to be reserved

res_name Name to be associated with resource.

Description

Mark the PCI region associated with PCI device *pdev* BR *bar* as being reserved by owner *res_name*. Do not access any address inside the PCI regions unless this call returns successfully.

Returns 0 on success, or EBUSY on error. A warning message is also printed on failure.

The key difference that _exclusive makes it that userspace is explicitly not allowed to map the resource via /dev/mem or sysfs.

Name

pci_release_selected_regions — Release selected PCI I/O and memory resources

Synopsis

```
void pci_release_selected_regions (struct pci_dev * pdev, int bars);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources were previously reserved

bars Bitmask of BARs to be released

Description

Release selected PCI I/O and memory resources previously reserved. Call this function only after all use of the PCI regions has ceased.

Name

pci_request_selected_regions — Reserve selected PCI I/O and memory resources

Synopsis

```
int pci_request_selected_regions (struct pci_dev * pdev, int bars, const
char * res_name);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources are to be reserved

bars Bitmask of BARs to be requested

res_name Name to be associated with resource

Name

pci_release_regions — Release reserved PCI I/O and memory resources

Synopsis

```
void pci_release_regions (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources were previously reserved by pci_request_regions

Description

Releases all PCI I/O and memory resources previously reserved by a successful call to pci_request_regions. Call this function only after all use of the PCI regions has ceased.

Name

pci_request_regions — Reserved PCI I/O and memory resources

Synopsis

```
int pci_request_regions (struct pci_dev * pdev, const char * res_name);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources are to be reserved

res_name Name to be associated with resource.

Description

Mark all PCI regions associated with PCI device *pdev* as being reserved by owner *res_name*. Do not access any address inside the PCI regions unless this call returns successfully.

Returns 0 on success, or EBUSY on error. A warning message is also printed on failure.

Name

pci_request_regions_exclusive — Reserved PCI I/O and memory resources

Synopsis

```
int pci_request_regions_exclusive (struct pci_dev * pdev, const char
* res_name);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device whose resources are to be reserved

res_name Name to be associated with resource.

Description

Mark all PCI regions associated with PCI device *pdev* as being reserved by owner *res_name*. Do not access any address inside the PCI regions unless this call returns successfully.

pci_request_regions_exclusive will mark the region so that /dev/mem and the sysfs MMIO access will not be allowed.

Returns 0 on success, or EBUSY on error. A warning message is also printed on failure.

Name

pci_set_master — enables bus-mastering for device dev

Synopsis

```
void pci_set_master (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to enable

Description

Enables bus-mastering on the device and calls `pcibios_set_master` to do the needed arch specific settings.

Name

pci_clear_master — disables bus-mastering for device dev

Synopsis

```
void pci_clear_master (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to disable

Name

pci_set_cacheline_size — ensure the CACHE_LINE_SIZE register is programmed

Synopsis

```
int pci_set_cacheline_size (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device for which MWI is to be enabled

Description

Helper function for pci_set_mwi. Originally copied from drivers/net/acenic.c. Copyright 1998-2001 by Jes Sorensen, <jes*trained*-monkey.org>.

RETURNS

An appropriate -ERRNO error value on error, or zero for success.

Name

pci_set_mwi — enables memory-write-invalidate PCI transaction

Synopsis

```
int pci_set_mwi (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device for which MWI is enabled

Description

Enables the Memory-Write-Invalidate transaction in `PCI_COMMAND`.

RETURNS

An appropriate -ERRNO error value on error, or zero for success.

Name

pci_try_set_mwi — enables memory-write-invalidate PCI transaction

Synopsis

```
int pci_try_set_mwi (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device for which MWI is enabled

Description

Enables the Memory-Write-Invalidate transaction in `PCI_COMMAND`. Callers are not required to check the return value.

RETURNS

An appropriate -ERRNO error value on error, or zero for success.

Name

pci_clear_mwi — disables Memory-Write-Invalidate for device dev

Synopsis

```
void pci_clear_mwi (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to disable

Description

Disables PCI Memory-Write-Invalidate transaction on the device

Name

pci_intx — enables/disables PCI INTx for device dev

Synopsis

```
void pci_intx (struct pci_dev * pdev, int enable);
```

Arguments

pdev the PCI device to operate on

enable boolean: whether to enable or disable PCI INTx

Description

Enables/disables PCI INTx for device dev

Name

pci_intx_mask_supported — probe for INTx masking support

Synopsis

```
bool pci_intx_mask_supported (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to operate on

Description

Check if the device dev support INTx masking via the config space command word.

Name

pci_check_and_mask_intx — mask INTx on pending interrupt

Synopsis

```
bool pci_check_and_mask_intx (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to operate on

Description

Check if the device dev has its INTx line asserted, mask it and return true in that case. False is returned if not interrupt was pending.

Name

pci_check_and_unmask_intx — unmask INTx if no interrupt is pending

Synopsis

```
bool pci_check_and_unmask_intx (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to operate on

Description

Check if the device dev has its INTx line asserted, unmask it if not and return true. False is returned and the mask remains active if there was still an interrupt pending.

Name

pci_wait_for_pending_transaction — waits for pending transaction

Synopsis

```
int pci_wait_for_pending_transaction (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device to operate on

Description

Return 0 if transaction is pending 1 otherwise.

Name

pci_reset_bridge_secondary_bus — Reset the secondary bus on a PCI bridge.

Synopsis

```
void pci_reset_bridge_secondary_bus (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev Bridge device

Description

Use the bridge control register to assert reset on the secondary bus. Devices on the secondary bus are left in power-on state.

Name

__pci_reset_function — reset a PCI device function

Synopsis

```
int __pci_reset_function (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to reset

Description

Some devices allow an individual function to be reset without affecting other functions in the same device. The PCI device must be responsive to PCI config space in order to use this function.

The device function is presumed to be unused when this function is called. Resetting the device will make the contents of PCI configuration space random, so any caller of this must be prepared to reinitialise the device including MSI, bus mastering, BARs, decoding IO and memory spaces, etc.

Returns 0 if the device function was successfully reset or negative if the device doesn't support resetting a single function.

Name

__pci_reset_function_locked — reset a PCI device function while holding the *dev* mutex lock.

Synopsis

```
int __pci_reset_function_locked (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to reset

Description

Some devices allow an individual function to be reset without affecting other functions in the same device. The PCI device must be responsive to PCI config space in order to use this function.

The device function is presumed to be unused and the caller is holding the device mutex lock when this function is called. Resetting the device will make the contents of PCI configuration space random, so any caller of this must be prepared to reinitialise the device including MSI, bus mastering, BARs, decoding IO and memory spaces, etc.

Returns 0 if the device function was successfully reset or negative if the device doesn't support resetting a single function.

Name

pci_reset_function — quiesce and reset a PCI device function

Synopsis

```
int pci_reset_function (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to reset

Description

Some devices allow an individual function to be reset without affecting other functions in the same device. The PCI device must be responsive to PCI config space in order to use this function.

This function does not just reset the PCI portion of a device, but clears all the state associated with the device. This function differs from __pci_reset_function in that it saves and restores device state over the reset.

Returns 0 if the device function was successfully reset or negative if the device doesn't support resetting a single function.

Name

pci_try_reset_function — quiesce and reset a PCI device function

Synopsis

```
int pci_try_reset_function (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to reset

Description

Same as above, except return -EAGAIN if unable to lock device.

Name

pci_probe_reset_slot — probe whether a PCI slot can be reset

Synopsis

```
int pci_probe_reset_slot (struct pci_slot * slot);
```

Arguments

slot PCI slot to probe

Description

Return 0 if slot can be reset, negative if a slot reset is not supported.

Name

pci_reset_slot — reset a PCI slot

Synopsis

```
int pci_reset_slot (struct pci_slot * slot);
```

Arguments

slot PCI slot to reset

Description

A PCI bus may host multiple slots, each slot may support a reset mechanism independent of other slots. For instance, some slots may support slot power control. In the case of a 1:1 bus to slot architecture, this function may wrap the bus reset to avoid spurious slot related events such as hotplug. Generally a slot reset should be attempted before a bus reset. All of the function of the slot and any subordinate buses behind the slot are reset through this function. PCI config space of all devices in the slot and behind the slot is saved before and restored after reset.

Return 0 on success, non-zero on error.

Name

pci_try_reset_slot — Try to reset a PCI slot

Synopsis

```
int pci_try_reset_slot (struct pci_slot * slot);
```

Arguments

slot PCI slot to reset

Description

Same as above except return -EAGAIN if the slot cannot be locked

Name

pci_probe_reset_bus — probe whether a PCI bus can be reset

Synopsis

```
int pci_probe_reset_bus (struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus PCI bus to probe

Description

Return 0 if bus can be reset, negative if a bus reset is not supported.

Name

pci_reset_bus — reset a PCI bus

Synopsis

```
int pci_reset_bus (struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus top level PCI bus to reset

Description

Do a bus reset on the given bus and any subordinate buses, saving and restoring state of all devices.

Return 0 on success, non-zero on error.

Name

pci_try_reset_bus — Try to reset a PCI bus

Synopsis

```
int pci_try_reset_bus (struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus top level PCI bus to reset

Description

Same as above except return -EAGAIN if the bus cannot be locked

Name

pcix_get_max_mmrbc — get PCI-X maximum designed memory read byte count

Synopsis

```
int pcix_get_max_mmrbc (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

Returns mmrbc

maximum designed memory read count in bytes or appropriate error value.

Name

pcix_get_mmrbc — get PCI-X maximum memory read byte count

Synopsis

```
int pcix_get_mmrbc (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

Returns mmrbc

maximum memory read count in bytes or appropriate error value.

Name

pcix_set_mmrbc — set PCI-X maximum memory read byte count

Synopsis

```
int pcix_set_mmrbc (struct pci_dev * dev, int mmrbc);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

mmrbc maximum memory read count in bytes valid values are 512, 1024, 2048, 4096

Description

If possible sets maximum memory read byte count, some bridges have erratas that prevent this.

Name

pcie_get_readrq — get PCI Express read request size

Synopsis

```
int pcie_get_readrq (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

Description

Returns maximum memory read request in bytes or appropriate error value.

Name

pcie_set_readrq — set PCI Express maximum memory read request

Synopsis

```
int pcie_set_readrq (struct pci_dev * dev, int rq);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

rq maximum memory read count in bytes valid values are 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096

Description

If possible sets maximum memory read request in bytes

Name

pcie_get_mps — get PCI Express maximum payload size

Synopsis

```
int pcie_get_mps (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

Description

Returns maximum payload size in bytes

Name

pcie_set_mps — set PCI Express maximum payload size

Synopsis

```
int pcie_set_mps (struct pci_dev * dev, int mps);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

mps maximum payload size in bytes valid values are 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096

Description

If possible sets maximum payload size

Name

pcie_get_minimum_link — determine minimum link settings of a PCI device

Synopsis

```
int pcie_get_minimum_link (struct pci_dev * dev, enum pci_bus_speed *
speed, enum pcie_link_width * width);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to query

speed storage for minimum speed

width storage for minimum width

Description

This function will walk up the PCI device chain and determine the minimum link width and speed of the device.

Name

pci_select_bars — Make BAR mask from the type of resource

Synopsis

```
int pci_select_bars (struct pci_dev * dev, unsigned long flags);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device for which BAR mask is made

flags resource type mask to be selected

Description

This helper routine makes bar mask from the type of resource.

Name

pci_add_dynid — add a new PCI device ID to this driver and re-probe devices

Synopsis

```
int pci_add_dynid (struct pci_driver * drv, unsigned int vendor, unsigned int device, unsigned int subvendor, unsigned int subdevice, unsigned int class, unsigned int class_mask, unsigned long driver_data);
```

Arguments

drv	target pci driver
vendor	PCI vendor ID
device	PCI device ID
subvendor	PCI subvendor ID
subdevice	PCI subdevice ID
class	PCI class
class_mask	PCI class mask
driver_data	private driver data

Description

Adds a new dynamic pci device ID to this driver and causes the driver to probe for all devices again. *drv* must have been registered prior to calling this function.

CONTEXT

Does GFP_KERNEL allocation.

RETURNS

0 on success, -errno on failure.

Name

pci_match_id — See if a pci device matches a given pci_id table

Synopsis

```
const struct pci_device_id * pci_match_id (const struct pci_device_id
* ids, struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

ids array of PCI device id structures to search in

dev the PCI device structure to match against.

Description

Used by a driver to check whether a PCI device present in the system is in its list of supported devices. Returns the matching pci_device_id structure or `NULL` if there is no match.

Deprecated, don't use this as it will not catch any dynamic ids that a driver might want to check for.

Name

__pci_register_driver — register a new pci driver

Synopsis

```
int __pci_register_driver (struct pci_driver * drv, struct module *
owner, const char * mod_name);
```

Arguments

drv	the driver structure to register
owner	owner module of drv
mod_name	module name string

Description

Adds the driver structure to the list of registered drivers. Returns a negative value on error, otherwise 0. If no error occurred, the driver remains registered even if no device was claimed during registration.

Name

pci_unregister_driver — unregister a pci driver

Synopsis

```
void pci_unregister_driver (struct pci_driver * drv);
```

Arguments

drv the driver structure to unregister

Description

Deletes the driver structure from the list of registered PCI drivers, gives it a chance to clean up by calling its `remove` function for each device it was responsible for, and marks those devices as driverless.

Name

pci_dev_driver — get the pci_driver of a device

Synopsis

```
struct pci_driver * pci_dev_driver (const struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the device to query

Description

Returns the appropriate pci_driver structure or NULL if there is no registered driver for the device.

Name

pci_dev_get — increments the reference count of the pci device structure

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_dev_get (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the device being referenced

Description

Each live reference to a device should be refcounted.

Drivers for PCI devices should normally record such references in their `probe` methods, when they bind to a device, and release them by calling `pci_dev_put`, in their `disconnect` methods.

A pointer to the device with the incremented reference counter is returned.

Name

pci_dev_put — release a use of the pci device structure

Synopsis

```
void pci_dev_put (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev device that's been disconnected

Description

Must be called when a user of a device is finished with it. When the last user of the device calls this function, the memory of the device is freed.

Name

pci_stop_and_remove_bus_device — remove a PCI device and any children

Synopsis

```
void pci_stop_and_remove_bus_device (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the device to remove

Description

Remove a PCI device from the device lists, informing the drivers that the device has been removed. We also remove any subordinate buses and children in a depth-first manner.

For each device we remove, delete the device structure from the device lists, remove the /proc entry, and notify userspace (/sbin/hotplug).

Name

pci_find_bus — locate PCI bus from a given domain and bus number

Synopsis

```
struct pci_bus * pci_find_bus (int domain, int busnr);
```

Arguments

domain number of PCI domain to search

busnr number of desired PCI bus

Description

Given a PCI bus number and domain number, the desired PCI bus is located in the global list of PCI buses. If the bus is found, a pointer to its data structure is returned. If no bus is found, NULL is returned.

Name

pci_find_next_bus — begin or continue searching for a PCI bus

Synopsis

```
struct pci_bus * pci_find_next_bus (const struct pci_bus * from);
```

Arguments

from Previous PCI bus found, or NULL for new search.

Description

Iterates through the list of known PCI buses. A new search is initiated by passing NULL as the *from* argument. Otherwise if *from* is not NULL, searches continue from next device on the global list.

Name

pci_get_slot — locate PCI device for a given PCI slot

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_get_slot (struct pci_bus * bus, unsigned int devfn);
```

Arguments

bus PCI bus on which desired PCI device resides

devfn encodes number of PCI slot in which the desired PCI device resides and the logical device number within that slot in case of multi-function devices.

Description

Given a PCI bus and slot/function number, the desired PCI device is located in the list of PCI devices. If the device is found, its reference count is increased and this function returns a pointer to its data structure. The caller must decrement the reference count by calling `pci_dev_put`. If no device is found, `NULL` is returned.

Name

pci_get_domain_bus_and_slot — locate PCI device for a given PCI domain (segment), bus, and slot

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_get_domain_bus_and_slot (int domain, unsigned int bus, unsigned int devfn);
```

Arguments

domain PCI domain/segment on which the PCI device resides.

bus PCI bus on which desired PCI device resides

devfn encodes number of PCI slot in which the desired PCI device resides and the logical device number within that slot in case of multi-function devices.

Description

Given a PCI domain, bus, and slot/function number, the desired PCI device is located in the list of PCI devices. If the device is found, its reference count is increased and this function returns a pointer to its data structure. The caller must decrement the reference count by calling `pci_dev_put`. If no device is found, `NULL` is returned.

Name

pci_get_subsys — begin or continue searching for a PCI device by vendor/subvendor/device/subdevice id

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_get_subsys (unsigned int vendor, unsigned int
device, unsigned int ss_vendor, unsigned int ss_device, struct pci_dev
* from);
```

Arguments

vendor	PCI vendor id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all vendor ids
device	PCI device id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all device ids
ss_vendor	PCI subsystem vendor id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all vendor ids
ss_device	PCI subsystem device id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all device ids
from	Previous PCI device found in search, or NULL for new search.

Description

Iterates through the list of known PCI devices. If a PCI device is found with a matching *vendor*, *device*, *ss_vendor* and *ss_device*, a pointer to its device structure is returned, and the reference count to the device is incremented. Otherwise, NULL is returned. A new search is initiated by passing NULL as the *from* argument. Otherwise if *from* is not NULL, searches continue from next device on the global list. The reference count for *from* is always decremented if it is not NULL.

Name

pci_get_device — begin or continue searching for a PCI device by vendor/device id

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_get_device (unsigned int vendor, unsigned int
device, struct pci_dev * from);
```

Arguments

vendor PCI vendor id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all vendor ids

device PCI device id to match, or PCI_ANY_ID to match all device ids

from Previous PCI device found in search, or NULL for new search.

Description

Iterates through the list of known PCI devices. If a PCI device is found with a matching *vendor* and *device*, the reference count to the device is incremented and a pointer to its device structure is returned. Otherwise, NULL is returned. A new search is initiated by passing NULL as the *from* argument. Otherwise if *from* is not NULL, searches continue from next device on the global list. The reference count for *from* is always decremented if it is not NULL.

Name

pci_get_class — begin or continue searching for a PCI device by class

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * pci_get_class (unsigned int class, struct pci_dev *
from);
```

Arguments

class search for a PCI device with this class designation

from Previous PCI device found in search, or NULL for new search.

Description

Iterates through the list of known PCI devices. If a PCI device is found with a matching *class*, the reference count to the device is incremented and a pointer to its device structure is returned. Otherwise, NULL is returned. A new search is initiated by passing NULL as the *from* argument. Otherwise if *from* is not NULL, searches continue from next device on the global list. The reference count for *from* is always decremented if it is not NULL.

Name

pci_dev_present — Returns 1 if device matching the device list is present, 0 if not.

Synopsis

```
int pci_dev_present (const struct pci_device_id * ids);
```

Arguments

ids A pointer to a null terminated list of struct pci_device_id structures that describe the type of PCI device the caller is trying to find.

Obvious fact

You do not have a reference to any device that might be found by this function, so if that device is removed from the system right after this function is finished, the value will be stale. Use this function to find devices that are usually built into a system, or for a general hint as to if another device happens to be present at this specific moment in time.

Name

pci_msi_mask_irq — Generic irq chip callback to mask PCI/MSI interrupts

Synopsis

```
void pci_msi_mask_irq (struct irq_data * data);
```

Arguments

data pointer to irqdata associated to that interrupt

Name

pci_msi_unmask_irq — Generic irq chip callback to unmask PCI/MSI interrupts

Synopsis

```
void pci_msi_unmask_irq (struct irq_data * data);
```

Arguments

data pointer to irqdata associated to that interrupt

Name

pci_msi_vec_count — Return the number of MSI vectors a device can send

Synopsis

```
int pci_msi_vec_count (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev device to report about

Description

This function returns the number of MSI vectors a device requested via Multiple Message Capable register. It returns a negative errno if the device is not capable sending MSI interrupts. Otherwise, the call succeeds and returns a power of two, up to a maximum of 2^5 (32), according to the MSI specification.

Name

pci_msix_vec_count — return the number of device's MSI-X table entries

Synopsis

```
int pci_msix_vec_count (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev pointer to the pci_dev data structure of MSI-X device function This function returns the number of device's MSI-X table entries and therefore the number of MSI-X vectors device is capable of sending. It returns a negative errno if the device is not capable of sending MSI-X interrupts.

Name

pci_enable_msix — configure device's MSI-X capability structure

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_msix (struct pci_dev * dev, struct msix_entry * entries,
int nvec);
```

Arguments

dev	pointer to the pci_dev data structure of MSI-X device function
entries	pointer to an array of MSI-X entries (optional)
nvec	number of MSI-X irqs requested for allocation by device driver

Description

Setup the MSI-X capability structure of device function with the number of requested irqs upon its software driver call to request for MSI-X mode enabled on its hardware device function. A return of zero indicates the successful configuration of MSI-X capability structure with new allocated MSI-X irqs. A return of < 0 indicates a failure. Or a return of > 0 indicates that driver request is exceeding the number of irqs or MSI-X vectors available. Driver should use the returned value to re-send its request.

Name

pci_msi_enabled — is MSI enabled?

Synopsis

```
int pci_msi_enabled ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

Returns true if MSI has not been disabled by the command-line option pci=nomsi.

Name

pci_enable_msi_range — configure device's MSI capability structure

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_msi_range (struct pci_dev * dev, int minvec, int maxvec);
```

Arguments

dev device to configure

minvec minimal number of interrupts to configure

maxvec maximum number of interrupts to configure

Description

This function tries to allocate a maximum possible number of interrupts in a range between *minvec* and *maxvec*. It returns a negative errno if an error occurs. If it succeeds, it returns the actual number of interrupts allocated and updates the *dev*'s irq member to the lowest new interrupt number; the other interrupt numbers allocated to this device are consecutive.

Name

pci_enable_msix_range — configure device's MSI-X capability structure

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_msix_range (struct pci_dev * dev, struct msix_entry *
entries, int minvec, int maxvec);
```

Arguments

dev	pointer to the pci_dev data structure of MSI-X device function
entries	pointer to an array of MSI-X entries
minvec	minimum number of MSI-X irqs requested
maxvec	maximum number of MSI-X irqs requested

Description

Setup the MSI-X capability structure of device function with a maximum possible number of interrupts in the range between *minvec* and *maxvec* upon its software driver call to request for MSI-X mode enabled on its hardware device function. It returns a negative errno if an error occurs. If it succeeds, it returns the actual number of interrupts allocated and indicates the successful configuration of MSI-X capability structure with new allocated MSI-X interrupts.

Name

pci_alloc_irq_vectors_affinity — allocate multiple IRQs for a device

Synopsis

```
int pci_alloc_irq_vectors_affinity (struct pci_dev * dev, unsigned int min_vecs, unsigned int max_vecs, unsigned int flags, const struct irq_affinity * affd);
```

Arguments

dev	PCI device to operate on
min_vecs	minimum number of vectors required (must be >= 1)
max_vecs	maximum (desired) number of vectors
flags	flags or quirks for the allocation
affd	optional description of the affinity requirements

Description

Allocate up to *max_vecs* interrupt vectors for *dev*, using MSI-X or MSI vectors if available, and fall back to a single legacy vector if neither is available. Return the number of vectors allocated, (which might be smaller than *max_vecs*) if successful, or a negative error code on error. If less than *min_vecs* interrupt vectors are available for *dev* the function will fail with -ENOSPC.

To get the Linux IRQ number used for a vector that can be passed to `request_irq` use the `pci_irq_vector` helper.

Name

pci_free_irq_vectors — free previously allocated IRQs for a device

Synopsis

```
void pci_free_irq_vectors (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to operate on

Description

Undoes the allocations and enabling in `pci_alloc_irq_vectors`.

Name

pci_irq_vector — return Linux IRQ number of a device vector

Synopsis

```
int pci_irq_vector (struct pci_dev * dev, unsigned int nr);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to operate on

nr device-relative interrupt vector index (0-based).

Name

pci_irq_get_affinity — return the affinity of a particular msi vector

Synopsis

```
const struct cpumask * pci_irq_get_affinity (struct pci_dev * dev, int nr);
```

Arguments

dev PCI device to operate on

nr device-relative interrupt vector index (0-based).

Name

pci_msi_create_irq_domain — Create a MSI interrupt domain

Synopsis

```
struct irq_domain * pci_msi_create_irq_domain (struct fwnode_handle *
fwnode, struct msi_domain_info * info, struct irq_domain * parent);
```

Arguments

fwnode Optional fwnode of the interrupt controller

info MSI domain info

parent Parent irq domain

Description

Updates the domain and chip ops and creates a MSI interrupt domain.

Returns

A domain pointer or NULL in case of failure.

Name

pci_bus_alloc_resource — allocate a resource from a parent bus

Synopsis

```
int pci_bus_alloc_resource (struct pci_bus * bus, struct resource * res, resource_size_t size, resource_size_t align, resource_size_t min, unsigned long type_mask, resource_size_t (*alignf) (void *, const struct resource *, resource_size_t, resource_size_t), void * alignf_data);
```

Arguments

bus	PCI bus
res	resource to allocate
size	size of resource to allocate
align	alignment of resource to allocate
min	minimum /proc/iomem address to allocate
type_mask	IORESOURCE_* type flags
alignf	resource alignment function
alignf_data	data argument for resource alignment function

Description

Given the PCI bus a device resides on, the size, minimum address, alignment and type, try to find an acceptable resource allocation for a specific device resource.

Name

pci_bus_add_device — start driver for a single device

Synopsis

```
void pci_bus_add_device (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev device to add

Description

This adds add sysfs entries and start device drivers

Name

pci_bus_add_devices — start driver for PCI devices

Synopsis

```
void pci_bus_add_devices (const struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus bus to check for new devices

Description

Start driver for PCI devices and add some sysfs entries.

Name

pci_bus_set_ops — Set raw operations of pci bus

Synopsis

```
struct pci_ops * pci_bus_set_ops (struct pci_bus * bus, struct pci_ops
* ops);
```

Arguments

bus pci bus struct

ops new raw operations

Description

Return previous raw operations

Name

pci_read_vpd — Read one entry from Vital Product Data

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_read_vpd (struct pci_dev * dev, loff_t pos, size_t count,
void * buf);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

pos offset in vpd space

count number of bytes to read

buf pointer to where to store result

Name

pci_write_vpd — Write entry to Vital Product Data

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_write_vpd (struct pci_dev * dev, loff_t pos, size_t count,
const void * buf);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

pos offset in vpd space

count number of bytes to write

buf buffer containing write data

Name

pci_set_vpd_size — Set size of Vital Product Data space

Synopsis

```
int pci_set_vpd_size (struct pci_dev * dev, size_t len);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

len size of vpd space

Name

pci_cfg_access_lock — Lock PCI config reads/writes

Synopsis

```
void pci_cfg_access_lock (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

Description

When access is locked, any userspace reads or writes to config space and concurrent lock requests will sleep until access is allowed via pci_cfg_access_unlocked again.

Name

pci_cfg_access_trylock — try to lock PCI config reads/writes

Synopsis

```
bool pci_cfg_access_trylock (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

Description

Same as pci_cfg_access_lock, but will return 0 if access is already locked, 1 otherwise. This function can be used from atomic contexts.

Name

pci_cfg_access_unlock — Unlock PCI config reads/writes

Synopsis

```
void pci_cfg_access_unlock (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev pci device struct

Description

This function allows PCI config accesses to resume.

Name

pci_lost_interrupt — reports a lost PCI interrupt

Synopsis

```
enum pci_lost_interrupt_reason pci_lost_interrupt (struct pci_dev *
pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev device whose interrupt is lost

Description

The primary function of this routine is to report a lost interrupt in a standard way which users can recognise (instead of blaming the driver).

Returns

a suggestion for fixing it (although the driver is not required to act on this).

Name

__ht_create_irq — create an irq and attach it to a device.

Synopsis

```
int __ht_create_irq (struct pci_dev * dev, int idx, ht_irq_update_t *
update);
```

Arguments

dev The hypertransport device to find the irq capability on.

idx Which of the possible irqs to attach to.

update Function to be called when changing the htirq message

Description

The irq number of the new irq or a negative error value is returned.

Name

ht_create_irq — create an irq and attach it to a device.

Synopsis

```
int ht_create_irq (struct pci_dev * dev, int idx);
```

Arguments

dev The hypertransport device to find the irq capability on.

idx Which of the possible irqs to attach to.

Description

ht_create_irq needs to be called for all hypertransport devices that generate irqs.

The irq number of the new irq or a negative error value is returned.

Name

ht_destroy_irq — destroy an irq created with ht_create_irq

Synopsis

```
void ht_destroy_irq (unsigned int irq);
```

Arguments

irq irq to be destroyed

Description

This reverses ht_create_irq removing the specified irq from existence. The irq should be free before this happens.

Name

pci_scan_slot — scan a PCI slot on a bus for devices.

Synopsis

```
int pci_scan_slot (struct pci_bus * bus, int devfn);
```

Arguments

bus PCI bus to scan

devfn slot number to scan (must have zero function.)

Description

Scan a PCI slot on the specified PCI bus for devices, adding discovered devices to the *bus*->devices list. New devices will not have is_added set.

Returns the number of new devices found.

Name

pci_rescan_bus — scan a PCI bus for devices.

Synopsis

```
unsigned int pci_rescan_bus (struct pci_bus * bus);
```

Arguments

bus PCI bus to scan

Description

Scan a PCI bus and child buses for new devices, adds them, and enables them.

Returns the max number of subordinate bus discovered.

Name

pci_create_slot — create or increment refcount for physical PCI slot

Synopsis

```
struct pci_slot * pci_create_slot (struct pci_bus * parent, int slot_nr,
const char * name, struct hotplug_slot * hotplug);
```

Arguments

parent struct pci_bus of parent bridge

slot_nr PCI_SLOT(pci_dev->devfn) or -1 for placeholder

name user visible string presented in /sys/bus/pci/slots/<name>

hotplug set if caller is hotplug driver, NULL otherwise

Description

PCI slots have first class attributes such as address, speed, width, and a struct pci_slot is used to manage them. This interface will either return a new struct pci_slot to the caller, or if the pci_slot already exists, its refcount will be incremented.

Slots are uniquely identified by a *pci_bus*, *slot_nr* tuple.

There are known platforms with broken firmware that assign the same name to multiple slots. Workaround these broken platforms by renaming the slots on behalf of the caller. If firmware assigns name N to

multiple slots

The first slot is assigned N The second slot is assigned N-1 The third slot is assigned N-2 etc.

Placeholder slots

In most cases, *pci_bus*, *slot_nr* will be sufficient to uniquely identify a slot. There is one notable exception - pSeries (rpaphp), where the *slot_nr* cannot be determined until a device is actually inserted into the slot. In this scenario, the caller may pass -1 for *slot_nr*.

The following semantics are imposed when the caller passes *slot_nr* == -1. First, we no longer check for an existing `struct` pci_slot, as there may be many slots with *slot_nr* of -1. The other change in semantics is user-visible, which is the 'address' parameter presented in sysfs will

consist solely of a dddd

bb tuple, where dddd is the PCI domain of the `struct` pci_bus and bb is the bus number. In other words, the devfn of the 'placeholder' slot will not be displayed.

Name

pci_destroy_slot — decrement refcount for physical PCI slot

Synopsis

```
void pci_destroy_slot (struct pci_slot * slot);
```

Arguments

slot struct pci_slot to decrement

Description

`struct` pci_slot is refcounted, so destroying them is really easy; we just call kobject_put on its kobj and let our release methods do the rest.

Name

pci_hp_create_module_link — create symbolic link to the hotplug driver module.

Synopsis

```
void pci_hp_create_module_link (struct pci_slot * pci_slot);
```

Arguments

pci_slot struct pci_slot

Description

Helper function for pci_hotplug_core.c to create symbolic link to the hotplug driver module.

Name

pci_hp_remove_module_link — remove symbolic link to the hotplug driver module.

Synopsis

```
void pci_hp_remove_module_link (struct pci_slot * pci_slot);
```

Arguments

pci_slot struct pci_slot

Description

Helper function for pci_hotplug_core.c to remove symbolic link to the hotplug driver module.

Name

pci_enable_rom — enable ROM decoding for a PCI device

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_rom (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device to enable

Description

Enable ROM decoding on *dev*. This involves simply turning on the last bit of the PCI ROM BAR. Note that some cards may share address decoders between the ROM and other resources, so enabling it may disable access to MMIO registers or other card memory.

Name

pci_disable_rom — disable ROM decoding for a PCI device

Synopsis

```
void pci_disable_rom (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev PCI device to disable

Description

Disable ROM decoding on a PCI device by turning off the last bit in the ROM BAR.

Name

pci_map_rom — map a PCI ROM to kernel space

Synopsis

```
void __iomem * pci_map_rom (struct pci_dev * pdev, size_t * size);
```

Arguments

pdev pointer to pci device struct

size pointer to receive size of pci window over ROM

Return

kernel virtual pointer to image of ROM

Map a PCI ROM into kernel space. If ROM is boot video ROM, the shadow BIOS copy will be returned instead of the actual ROM.

Name

pci_unmap_rom — unmap the ROM from kernel space

Synopsis

```
void pci_unmap_rom (struct pci_dev * pdev, void __iomem * rom);
```

Arguments

pdev pointer to pci device struct

rom virtual address of the previous mapping

Description

Remove a mapping of a previously mapped ROM

Name

pci_platform_rom — provides a pointer to any ROM image provided by the platform

Synopsis

```
void __iomem * pci_platform_rom (struct pci_dev * pdev, size_t * size);
```

Arguments

pdev pointer to pci device struct

size pointer to receive size of pci window over ROM

Name

pci_enable_sriov — enable the SR-IOV capability

Synopsis

```
int pci_enable_sriov (struct pci_dev * dev, int nr_virtfn);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device

nr_virtfn number of virtual functions to enable

Description

Returns 0 on success, or negative on failure.

Name

pci_disable_sriov — disable the SR-IOV capability

Synopsis

```
void pci_disable_sriov (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device

Name

pci_num_vf — return number of VFs associated with a PF device_release_driver

Synopsis

```
int pci_num_vf (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device

Description

Returns number of VFs, or 0 if SR-IOV is not enabled.

Name

pci_vfs_assigned — returns number of VFs are assigned to a guest

Synopsis

```
int pci_vfs_assigned (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI device

Description

Returns number of VFs belonging to this device that are assigned to a guest. If device is not a physical function returns 0.

Name

pci_sriov_set_totalvfs — - reduce the TotalVFs available

Synopsis

```
int pci_sriov_set_totalvfs (struct pci_dev * dev, u16 numvfs);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI PF device

numvfs number that should be used for TotalVFs supported

Description

Should be called from PF driver's probe routine with device's mutex held.

Returns 0 if PF is an SRIOV-capable device and value of numvfs valid. If not a PF return -ENOSYS; if numvfs is invalid return -EINVAL; if VFs already enabled, return -EBUSY.

Name

pci_sriov_get_totalvfs — - get total VFs supported on this device

Synopsis

```
int pci_sriov_get_totalvfs (struct pci_dev * dev);
```

Arguments

dev the PCI PF device

Description

For a PCIe device with SRIOV support, return the PCIe SRIOV capability value of TotalVFs or the value of driver_max_VFs if the driver reduced it. Otherwise 0.

Name

pci_read_legacy_io — read byte(s) from legacy I/O port space

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_read_legacy_io (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj,
struct bin_attribute * bin_attr, char * buf, loff_t off, size_t count);
```

Arguments

filp	open sysfs file
kobj	kobject corresponding to file to read from
bin_attr	struct bin_attribute for this file
buf	buffer to store results
off	offset into legacy I/O port space
count	number of bytes to read

Description

Reads 1, 2, or 4 bytes from legacy I/O port space using an arch specific callback routine (pci_legacy_read).

Name

pci_write_legacy_io — write byte(s) to legacy I/O port space

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_write_legacy_io (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj,
struct bin_attribute * bin_attr, char * buf, loff_t off, size_t count);
```

Arguments

filp	open sysfs file
kobj	kobject corresponding to file to read from
bin_attr	struct bin_attribute for this file
buf	buffer containing value to be written
off	offset into legacy I/O port space
count	number of bytes to write

Description

Writes 1, 2, or 4 bytes from legacy I/O port space using an arch specific callback routine (pci_legacy_write).

Name

pci_mmap_legacy_mem — map legacy PCI memory into user memory space

Synopsis

```
int pci_mmap_legacy_mem (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj,
struct bin_attribute * attr, struct vm_area_struct * vma);
```

Arguments

filp open sysfs file

kobj kobject corresponding to device to be mapped

attr struct bin_attribute for this file

vma struct vm_area_struct passed to mmap

Description

Uses an arch specific callback, pci_mmap_legacy_mem_page_range, to mmap legacy memory space (first meg of bus space) into application virtual memory space.

Name

pci_mmap_legacy_io — map legacy PCI IO into user memory space

Synopsis

```
int pci_mmap_legacy_io (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj,
struct bin_attribute * attr, struct vm_area_struct * vma);
```

Arguments

filp open sysfs file

kobj kobject corresponding to device to be mapped

attr struct bin_attribute for this file

vma struct vm_area_struct passed to mmap

Description

Uses an arch specific callback, pci_mmap_legacy_io_page_range, to mmap legacy IO space (first meg of bus space) into application virtual memory space. Returns -ENOSYS if the operation isn't supported

Name

pci_adjust_legacy_attr — adjustment of legacy file attributes

Synopsis

```
void pci_adjust_legacy_attr (struct pci_bus * b, enum pci_mmap_state mmap_type);
```

Arguments

b bus to create files under

mmap_type I/O port or memory

Description

Stub implementation. Can be overridden by arch if necessary.

Name

pci_create_legacy_files — create legacy I/O port and memory files

Synopsis

```
void pci_create_legacy_files (struct pci_bus * b);
```

Arguments

b bus to create files under

Description

Some platforms allow access to legacy I/O port and ISA memory space on a per-bus basis. This routine creates the files and ties them into their associated read, write and mmap files from pci-sysfs.c

On error unwind, but don't propagate the error to the caller as it is ok to set up the PCI bus without these files.

Name

pci_mmap_resource — map a PCI resource into user memory space

Synopsis

```
int pci_mmap_resource (struct kobject * kobj, struct bin_attribute *
attr, struct vm_area_struct * vma, int write_combine);
```

Arguments

kobj	kobject for mapping
attr	struct bin_attribute for the file being mapped
vma	struct vm_area_struct passed into the mmap
write_combine	1 for write_combine mapping

Description

Use the regular PCI mapping routines to map a PCI resource into userspace.

Name

pci_remove_resource_files — cleanup resource files

Synopsis

```
void pci_remove_resource_files (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev dev to cleanup

Description

If we created resource files for *pdev*, remove them from sysfs and free their resources.

Name

pci_create_resource_files — create resource files in sysfs for *dev*

Synopsis

```
int pci_create_resource_files (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev dev in question

Description

Walk the resources in *pdev* creating files for each resource available.

Name

pci_write_rom — used to enable access to the PCI ROM display

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_write_rom (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj, struct
bin_attribute * bin_attr, char * buf, loff_t off, size_t count);
```

Arguments

filp	sysfs file
kobj	kernel object handle
bin_attr	struct bin_attribute for this file
buf	user input
off	file offset
count	number of byte in input

Description

writing anything except 0 enables it

Name

pci_read_rom — read a PCI ROM

Synopsis

```
ssize_t pci_read_rom (struct file * filp, struct kobject * kobj, struct
bin_attribute * bin_attr, char * buf, loff_t off, size_t count);
```

Arguments

filp	sysfs file
kobj	kernel object handle
bin_attr	struct bin_attribute for this file
buf	where to put the data we read from the ROM
off	file offset
count	number of bytes to read

Description

Put *count* bytes starting at *off* into *buf* from the ROM in the PCI device corresponding to *kobj*.

Name

pci_remove_sysfs_dev_files — cleanup PCI specific sysfs files

Synopsis

```
void pci_remove_sysfs_dev_files (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

Arguments

pdev device whose entries we should free

Description

Cleanup when *pdev* is removed from sysfs.

PCI Hotplug Support Library

Name

__pci_hp_register — register a hotplug_slot with the PCI hotplug subsystem

Synopsis

```
int __pci_hp_register (struct hotplug_slot * slot, struct pci_bus *
bus, int devnr, const char * name, struct module * owner, const char
* mod_name);
```

Arguments

slot	pointer to the struct hotplug_slot to register
bus	bus this slot is on
devnr	device number
name	name registered with kobject core
owner	caller module owner
mod_name	caller module name

Description

Registers a hotplug slot with the pci hotplug subsystem, which will allow userspace interaction to the slot.

Returns 0 if successful, anything else for an error.

Name

pci_hp_deregister — deregister a hotplug_slot with the PCI hotplug subsystem

Synopsis

```
int pci_hp_deregister (struct hotplug_slot * slot);
```

Arguments

slot pointer to the struct hotplug_slot to deregister

Description

The *slot* must have been registered with the pci hotplug subsystem previously with a call to pci_hp_register.

Returns 0 if successful, anything else for an error.

Name

pci_hp_change_slot_info — changes the slot's information structure in the core

Synopsis

```
int pci_hp_change_slot_info (struct hotplug_slot * slot, struct hotplug_slot_info * info);
```

Arguments

slot pointer to the slot whose info has changed

info pointer to the info copy into the slot's info structure

Description

slot must have been registered with the pci hotplug subsystem previously with a call to pci_hp_register.

Returns 0 if successful, anything else for an error.

Chapter 10. Firmware Interfaces

DMI Interfaces

Name

dmi_check_system — check system DMI data

Synopsis

```
int dmi_check_system (const struct dmi_system_id * list);
```

Arguments

list array of dmi_system_id structures to match against All non-null elements of the list must match their slot's (field index's) data (i.e., each list string must be a substring of the specified DMI slot's string data) to be considered a successful match.

Description

Walk the blacklist table running matching functions until someone returns non zero or we hit the end. Callback function is called for each successful match. Returns the number of matches.

Name

dmi_first_match — find dmi_system_id structure matching system DMI data

Synopsis

```
const struct dmi_system_id * dmi_first_match (const struct dmi_system_id
* list);
```

Arguments

list array of dmi_system_id structures to match against All non-null elements of the list must match their slot's (field index's) data (i.e., each list string must be a substring of the specified DMI slot's string data) to be considered a successful match.

Description

Walk the blacklist table until the first match is found. Return the pointer to the matching entry or NULL if there's no match.

Name

dmi_get_system_info — return DMI data value

Synopsis

```
const char * dmi_get_system_info (int field);
```

Arguments

field data index (see enum dmi_field)

Description

Returns one DMI data value, can be used to perform complex DMI data checks.

Name

dmi_name_in_vendors — Check if string is in the DMI system or board vendor name

Synopsis

```
int dmi_name_in_vendors (const char * str);
```

Arguments

str Case sensitive Name

Name

dmi_find_device — find onboard device by type/name

Synopsis

```
const struct dmi_device * dmi_find_device (int type, const char * name,
const struct dmi_device * from);
```

Arguments

type device type or DMI_DEV_TYPE_ANY to match all device types

name device name string or NULL to match all

from previous device found in search, or NULL for new search.

Description

Iterates through the list of known onboard devices. If a device is found with a matching *vendor* and *device*, a pointer to its device structure is returned. Otherwise, NULL is returned. A new search is initiated by passing NULL as the *from* argument. If *from* is not NULL, searches continue from next device.

Name

dmi_get_date — parse a DMI date

Synopsis

```
bool dmi_get_date (int field, int * yearp, int * monthp, int * dayp);
```

Arguments

field data index (see enum dmi_field)

yearp optional out parameter for the year

monthp optional out parameter for the month

dayp optional out parameter for the day

Description

The date field is assumed to be in the form resembling [mm[/dd]]/yy[yy] and the result is stored in the out parameters any or all of which can be omitted.

If the field doesn't exist, all out parameters are set to zero and false is returned. Otherwise, true is returned with any invalid part of date set to zero.

On return, year, month and day are guaranteed to be in the range of [0,9999], [0,12] and [0,31] respectively.

Name

dmi_walk — Walk the DMI table and get called back for every record

Synopsis

```
int dmi_walk (void (*decode) (const struct dmi_header *, void *), void
* private_data);
```

Arguments

decode	Callback function
private_data	Private data to be passed to the callback function

Description

Returns -1 when the DMI table can't be reached, 0 on success.

Name

dmi_match — compare a string to the dmi field (if exists)

Synopsis

```
bool dmi_match (enum dmi_field f, const char * str);
```

Arguments

f DMI field identifier

str string to compare the DMI field to

Description

Returns true if the requested field equals to the str (including NULL).

EDD Interfaces

Name

edd_show_raw_data — copies raw data to buffer for userspace to parse

Synopsis

```
ssize_t edd_show_raw_data (struct edd_device * edev, char * buf);
```

Arguments

edev target edd_device

buf output buffer

Returns

number of bytes written, or -EINVAL on failure

Name

edd_release — free edd structure

Synopsis

```
void edd_release (struct kobject * kobj);
```

Arguments

kobj kobject of edd structure

Description

This is called when the refcount of the edd structure reaches 0. This should happen right after we unregister, but just in case, we use the release callback anyway.

Name

edd_dev_is_type — is this EDD device a 'type' device?

Synopsis

```
int edd_dev_is_type (struct edd_device * edev, const char * type);
```

Arguments

edev target edd_device

type a host bus or interface identifier string per the EDD spec

Description

Returns 1 (TRUE) if it is a 'type' device, 0 otherwise.

Name

edd_get_pci_dev — finds pci_dev that matches edev

Synopsis

```
struct pci_dev * edd_get_pci_dev (struct edd_device * edev);
```

Arguments

edev edd_device

Description

Returns pci_dev if found, or NULL

Name

edd_init — creates sysfs tree of EDD data

Synopsis

```
int edd_init ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Chapter 11. Security Framework

Name

security_init — initializes the security framework

Synopsis

```
int security_init ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

This should be called early in the kernel initialization sequence.

Name

security_module_enable — Load given security module on boot ?

Synopsis

```
int security_module_enable (const char * module);
```

Arguments

module the name of the module

Description

Each LSM must pass this method before registering its own operations to avoid security registration races. This method may also be used to check if your LSM is currently loaded during kernel initialization.

Return true if

-The passed LSM is the one chosen by user at boot time, -or the passed LSM is configured as the default and the user did not choose an alternate LSM at boot time. Otherwise, return false.

Name

securityfs_create_file — create a file in the securityfs filesystem

Synopsis

```
struct dentry * securityfs_create_file (const char * name, umode_t mode,
struct dentry * parent, void * data, const struct file_operations *
fops);
```

Arguments

name a pointer to a string containing the name of the file to create.

mode the permission that the file should have

parent a pointer to the parent dentry for this file. This should be a directory dentry if set. If this parameter is NULL, then the file will be created in the root of the securityfs filesystem.

data a pointer to something that the caller will want to get to later on. The inode.i_private pointer will point to this value on the open call.

fops a pointer to a struct file_operations that should be used for this file.

Description

This is the basic “create a file” function for securityfs. It allows for a wide range of flexibility in creating a file, or a directory (if you want to create a directory, the securityfs_create_dir function is recommended to be used instead).

This function returns a pointer to a dentry if it succeeds. This pointer must be passed to the securityfs_remove function when the file is to be removed (no automatic cleanup happens if your module is unloaded, you are responsible here). If an error occurs, the function will return the error value (via ERR_PTR).

If securityfs is not enabled in the kernel, the value -ENODEV is returned.

Name

securityfs_create_dir — create a directory in the securityfs filesystem

Synopsis

```
struct dentry * securityfs_create_dir (const char * name, struct dentry
* parent);
```

Arguments

name a pointer to a string containing the name of the directory to create.

parent a pointer to the parent dentry for this file. This should be a directory dentry if set. If this parameter is NULL, then the directory will be created in the root of the securityfs filesystem.

Description

This function creates a directory in securityfs with the given *name*.

This function returns a pointer to a dentry if it succeeds. This pointer must be passed to the securityfs_remove function when the file is to be removed (no automatic cleanup happens if your module is unloaded, you are responsible here). If an error occurs, NULL will be returned.

If securityfs is not enabled in the kernel, the value -ENODEV is returned. It is not wise to check for this value, but rather, check for NULL or !NULL instead as to eliminate the need for #ifdef in the calling code.

Name

securityfs_remove — removes a file or directory from the securityfs filesystem

Synopsis

```
void securityfs_remove (struct dentry * dentry);
```

Arguments

dentry a pointer to a the dentry of the file or directory to be removed.

Description

This function removes a file or directory in securityfs that was previously created with a call to another securityfs function (like `securityfs_create_file` or variants thereof.)

This function is required to be called in order for the file to be removed. No automatic cleanup of files will happen when a module is removed; you are responsible here.

Chapter 12. Audit Interfaces

Name

audit_log_start — obtain an audit buffer

Synopsis

```
struct audit_buffer * audit_log_start (struct audit_context * ctx, gfp_t
gfp_mask, int type);
```

Arguments

ctx	audit_context (may be NULL)
gfp_mask	type of allocation
type	audit message type

Description

Returns audit_buffer pointer on success or NULL on error.

Obtain an audit buffer. This routine does locking to obtain the audit buffer, but then no locking is required for calls to audit_log_*format. If the task (ctx) is a task that is currently in a syscall, then the syscall is marked as auditable and an audit record will be written at syscall exit. If there is no associated task, then task context (ctx) should be NULL.

Name

audit_log_format — format a message into the audit buffer.

Synopsis

```
void audit_log_format (struct audit_buffer * ab, const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

ab audit_buffer

fmt format string @...: optional parameters matching *fmt* string

... variable arguments

Description

All the work is done in audit_log_vformat.

Name

audit_log_end — end one audit record

Synopsis

```
void audit_log_end (struct audit_buffer * ab);
```

Arguments

ab the audit_buffer

Description

`netlink_unicast` cannot be called inside an irq context because it blocks (last arg, flags, is not set to MSG_DONTWAIT), so the audit buffer is placed on a queue and a tasklet is scheduled to remove them from the queue outside the irq context. May be called in any context.

Name

audit_log — Log an audit record

Synopsis

```
void audit_log (struct audit_context * ctx, gfp_t gfp_mask, int type,
const char * fmt, ...);
```

Arguments

ctx	audit context
gfp_mask	type of allocation
type	audit message type
fmt	format string to use @...: variable parameters matching the format string
...	variable arguments

Description

This is a convenience function that calls audit_log_start, audit_log_vformat, and audit_log_end. It may be called in any context.

Name

audit_log_secctx — Converts and logs SELinux context

Synopsis

```
void audit_log_secctx (struct audit_buffer * ab, u32 secid);
```

Arguments

ab audit_buffer

secid security number

Description

This is a helper function that calls security_secid_to_secctx to convert secid to secctx and then adds the (converted) SELinux context to the audit log by calling audit_log_format, thus also preventing leak of internal secid to userspace. If secid cannot be converted audit_panic is called.

Name

audit_alloc — allocate an audit context block for a task

Synopsis

```
int audit_alloc (struct task_struct * tsk);
```

Arguments

tsk task

Description

Filter on the task information and allocate a per-task audit context if necessary. Doing so turns on system call auditing for the specified task. This is called from copy_process, so no lock is needed.

Name

__audit_free — free a per-task audit context

Synopsis

```
void __audit_free (struct task_struct * tsk);
```

Arguments

tsk task whose audit context block to free

Description

Called from copy_process and do_exit

Name

__audit_syscall_entry — fill in an audit record at syscall entry

Synopsis

```
void __audit_syscall_entry (int major, unsigned long a1, unsigned long
a2, unsigned long a3, unsigned long a4);
```

Arguments

major major syscall type (function)

a1 additional syscall register 1

a2 additional syscall register 2

a3 additional syscall register 3

a4 additional syscall register 4

Description

Fill in audit context at syscall entry. This only happens if the audit context was created when the task was created and the state or filters demand the audit context be built. If the state from the per-task filter or from the per-syscall filter is AUDIT_RECORD_CONTEXT, then the record will be written at syscall exit time (otherwise, it will only be written if another part of the kernel requests that it be written).

Name

__audit_syscall_exit — deallocate audit context after a system call

Synopsis

```
void __audit_syscall_exit (int success, long return_code);
```

Arguments

success	success value of the syscall
return_code	return value of the syscall

Description

Tear down after system call. If the audit context has been marked as auditable (either because of the AUDIT_RECORD_CONTEXT state from filtering, or because some other part of the kernel wrote an audit message), then write out the syscall information. In call cases, free the names stored from `getname`.

Name

__audit_reusename — fill out filename with info from existing entry

Synopsis

```
struct filename * __audit_reusename (const __user char * uptr);
```

Arguments

uptr userland ptr to pathname

Description

Search the audit_names list for the current audit context. If there is an existing entry with a matching “uptr” then return the filename associated with that audit_name. If not, return NULL.

Name

__audit_getname — add a name to the list

Synopsis

```
void __audit_getname (struct filename * name);
```

Arguments

name name to add

Description

Add a name to the list of audit names for this context. Called from fs/namei.c:`getname`.

Name

__audit_inode — store the inode and device from a lookup

Synopsis

```
void __audit_inode (struct filename * name, const struct dentry * dentry,
unsigned int flags);
```

Arguments

name name being audited

dentry dentry being audited

flags attributes for this particular entry

Name

auditsc_get_stamp — get local copies of audit_context values

Synopsis

```
int auditsc_get_stamp (struct audit_context * ctx, struct timespec *
t, unsigned int * serial);
```

Arguments

ctx	audit_context for the task
t	timespec to store time recorded in the audit_context
serial	serial value that is recorded in the audit_context

Description

Also sets the context as auditable.

Name

audit_set_loginuid — set current task's audit_context loginuid

Synopsis

```
int audit_set_loginuid (kuid_t loginuid);
```

Arguments

loginuid loginuid value

Description

Returns 0.

Called (set) from fs/proc/base.c::`proc_loginuid_write`.

Name

__audit_mq_open — record audit data for a POSIX MQ open

Synopsis

```
void __audit_mq_open (int oflag, umode_t mode, struct mq_attr * attr);
```

Arguments

oflag open flag

mode mode bits

attr queue attributes

Name

__audit_mq_sendrecv — record audit data for a POSIX MQ timed send/receive

Synopsis

```
void __audit_mq_sendrecv (mqd_t mqdes, size_t msg_len, unsigned int
msg_prio, const struct timespec * abs_timeout);
```

Arguments

mqdes	MQ descriptor
msg_len	Message length
msg_prio	Message priority
abs_timeout	Message timeout in absolute time

Name

__audit_mq_notify — record audit data for a POSIX MQ notify

Synopsis

```
void __audit_mq_notify (mqd_t mqdes, const struct sigevent * notifica-
tion);
```

Arguments

mqdes	MQ descriptor
notification	Notification event

Name

__audit_mq_getsetattr — record audit data for a POSIX MQ get/set attribute

Synopsis

```
void __audit_mq_getsetattr (mqd_t mqdes, struct mq_attr * mqstat);
```

Arguments

mqdes MQ descriptor

mqstat MQ flags

Name

__audit_ipc_obj — record audit data for ipc object

Synopsis

```
void __audit_ipc_obj (struct kern_ipc_perm * ipcp);
```

Arguments

ipcp ipc permissions

Name

__audit_ipc_set_perm — record audit data for new ipc permissions

Synopsis

```
void __audit_ipc_set_perm (unsigned long qbytes, uid_t uid, gid_t gid,
umode_t mode);
```

Arguments

qbytes msgq bytes

uid msgq user id

gid msgq group id

mode msgq mode (permissions)

Description

Called only after `audit_ipc_obj`.

Name

__audit_socketcall — record audit data for sys_socketcall

Synopsis

```
int __audit_socketcall (int nargs, unsigned long * args);
```

Arguments

nargs number of args, which should not be more than AUDITSC_ARGS.

args args array

Name

__audit_fd_pair — record audit data for pipe and socketpair

Synopsis

```
void __audit_fd_pair (int fd1, int fd2);
```

Arguments

fd1 the first file descriptor

fd2 the second file descriptor

Name

__audit_sockaddr — record audit data for sys_bind, sys_connect, sys_sendto

Synopsis

```
int __audit_sockaddr (int len, void * a);
```

Arguments

len data length in user space

a data address in kernel space

Description

Returns 0 for success or NULL context or < 0 on error.

Name

__audit_signal_info — record signal info for shutting down audit subsystem

Synopsis

```
int __audit_signal_info (int sig, struct task_struct * t);
```

Arguments

sig signal value

t task being signaled

Description

If the audit subsystem is being terminated, record the task (pid) and uid that is doing that.

Name

__audit_log_bprm_fcaps — store information about a loading bprm and relevant fcaps

Synopsis

```
int __audit_log_bprm_fcaps (struct linux_binprm * bprm, const struct
cred * new, const struct cred * old);
```

Arguments

bprm pointer to the bprm being processed

new the proposed new credentials

old the old credentials

Description

Simply check if the proc already has the caps given by the file and if not store the priv escalation info for later auditing at the end of the syscall

-Eric

Name

__audit_log_capset — store information about the arguments to the capset syscall

Synopsis

```
void __audit_log_capset (const struct cred * new, const struct cred
* old);
```

Arguments

new the new credentials

old the old (current) credentials

Description

Record the arguments userspace sent to sys_capset for later printing by the audit system if applicable

Name

audit_core_dumps — record information about processes that end abnormally

Synopsis

```
void audit_core_dumps (long signr);
```

Arguments

signr signal value

Description

If a process ends with a core dump, something fishy is going on and we should record the event for investigation.

Name

audit_rule_change — apply all rules to the specified message type

Synopsis

```
int audit_rule_change (int type, __u32 portid, int seq, void * data,
size_t datasz);
```

Arguments

type	audit message type
portid	target port id for netlink audit messages
seq	netlink audit message sequence (serial) number
data	payload data
datasz	size of payload data

Name

audit_list_rules_send — list the audit rules

Synopsis

```
int audit_list_rules_send (struct sk_buff * request_skb, int seq);
```

Arguments

request_skb	skb of request we are replying to (used to target the reply)
seq	netlink audit message sequence (serial) number

Name

parent_len — find the length of the parent portion of a pathname

Synopsis

```
int parent_len (const char * path);
```

Arguments

path pathname of which to determine length

Name

audit_compare_dname_path — compare given dentry name with last component in given path. Return of 0 indicates a match.

Synopsis

```
int audit_compare_dname_path (const char * dname, const char * path,
int parentlen);
```

Arguments

dname	dentry name that we're comparing
path	full pathname that we're comparing
parentlen	length of the parent if known. Passing in AUDIT_NAME_FULL here indicates that we must compute this value.

Chapter 13. Accounting Framework

Name

sys_acct — enable/disable process accounting

Synopsis

```
long sys_acct (const char __user * name);
```

Arguments

name file name for accounting records or NULL to shutdown accounting

Description

Returns 0 for success or negative errno values for failure.

`sys_acct` is the only system call needed to implement process accounting. It takes the name of the file where accounting records should be written. If the filename is NULL, accounting will be shutdown.

Name

acct_collect — collect accounting information into pacct_struct

Synopsis

```
void acct_collect (long exitcode, int group_dead);
```

Arguments

exitcode	task exit code
group_dead	not 0, if this thread is the last one in the process.

Name

acct_process —

Synopsis

```
void acct_process ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

handles process accounting for an exiting task

Chapter 14. Block Devices

Name

blk_delay_queue — restart queueing after defined interval

Synopsis

```
void blk_delay_queue (struct request_queue * q, unsigned long msecs);
```

Arguments

q The struct request_queue in question

msecs Delay in msecs

Description

Sometimes queueing needs to be postponed for a little while, to allow resources to come back. This function will make sure that queueing is restarted around the specified time. Queue lock must be held.

Name

blk_start_queue_async — asynchronously restart a previously stopped queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_start_queue_async (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The struct request_queue in question

Description

`blk_start_queue_async` will clear the stop flag on the queue, and ensure that the request_fn for the queue is run from an async context.

Name

blk_start_queue — restart a previously stopped queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_start_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The struct request_queue in question

Description

`blk_start_queue` will clear the stop flag on the queue, and call the request_fn for the queue if it was in a stopped state when entered. Also see `blk_stop_queue`. Queue lock must be held.

Name

blk_stop_queue — stop a queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_stop_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The struct request_queue in question

Description

The Linux block layer assumes that a block driver will consume all entries on the request queue when the request_fn strategy is called. Often this will not happen, because of hardware limitations (queue depth settings). If a device driver gets a 'queue full' response, or if it simply chooses not to queue more I/O at one point, it can call this function to prevent the request_fn from being called until the driver has signalled it's ready to go again. This happens by calling `blk_start_queue` to restart queue operations. Queue lock must be held.

Name

blk_sync_queue — cancel any pending callbacks on a queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_sync_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the queue

Description

The block layer may perform asynchronous callback activity on a queue, such as calling the unplug function after a timeout. A block device may call blk_sync_queue to ensure that any such activity is cancelled, thus allowing it to release resources that the callbacks might use. The caller must already have made sure that its ->make_request_fn will not re-add plugging prior to calling this function.

This function does not cancel any asynchronous activity arising out of elevator or throttling code. That would require `elevator_exit` and `blkcg_exit_queue` to be called with queue lock initialized.

Name

__blk_run_queue_uncond — run a queue whether or not it has been stopped

Synopsis

```
void __blk_run_queue_uncond (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The queue to run

Description

Invoke request handling on a queue if there are any pending requests. May be used to restart request handling after a request has completed. This variant runs the queue whether or not the queue has been stopped. Must be called with the queue lock held and interrupts disabled. See also *blk_run_queue*.

Name

__blk_run_queue — run a single device queue

Synopsis

```
void __blk_run_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The queue to run

Description

See *blk_run_queue*. This variant must be called with the queue lock held and interrupts disabled.

Name

blk_run_queue_async — run a single device queue in workqueue context

Synopsis

```
void blk_run_queue_async (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The queue to run

Description

Tells kblockd to perform the equivalent of *blk_run_queue* on behalf of us. The caller must hold the queue lock.

Name

blk_run_queue — run a single device queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_run_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q The queue to run

Description

Invoke request handling on this queue, if it has pending work to do. May be used to restart queueing when a request has completed.

Name

blk_queue_bypass_start — enter queue bypass mode

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_bypass_start (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q queue of interest

Description

In bypass mode, only the dispatch FIFO queue of *q* is used. This function makes *q* enter bypass mode and drains all requests which were throttled or issued before. On return, it's guaranteed that no request is being throttled or has ELVPRIV set and `blk_queue_bypass true` inside queue or RCU read lock.

Name

blk_queue_bypass_end — leave queue bypass mode

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_bypass_end (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q queue of interest

Description

Leave bypass mode and restore the normal queueing behavior.

Name

blk_cleanup_queue — shutdown a request queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_cleanup_queue (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q request queue to shutdown

Description

Mark *q* DYING, drain all pending requests, mark *q* DEAD, destroy and put it. All future requests will be failed immediately with -ENODEV.

Name

blk_init_queue — prepare a request queue for use with a block device

Synopsis

```
struct request_queue * blk_init_queue (request_fn_proc * rfn, spinlock_t
* lock);
```

Arguments

rfn The function to be called to process requests that have been placed on the queue.

lock Request queue spin lock

Description

If a block device wishes to use the standard request handling procedures, which sorts requests and coalesces adjacent requests, then it must call `blk_init_queue`. The function *rfn* will be called when there are requests on the queue that need to be processed. If the device supports plugging, then *rfn* may not be called immediately when requests are available on the queue, but may be called at some time later instead. Plugged queues are generally unplugged when a buffer belonging to one of the requests on the queue is needed, or due to memory pressure.

rfn is not required, or even expected, to remove all requests off the queue, but only as many as it can handle at a time. If it does leave requests on the queue, it is responsible for arranging that the requests get dealt with eventually.

The queue spin lock must be held while manipulating the requests on the request queue; this lock will be taken also from interrupt context, so irq disabling is needed for it.

Function returns a pointer to the initialized request queue, or `NULL` if it didn't succeed.

Note

`blk_init_queue` must be paired with a `blk_cleanup_queue` call when the block device is deactivated (such as at module unload).

Name

blk_rq_set_block_pc — initialize a request to type BLOCK_PC

Synopsis

```
void blk_rq_set_block_pc (struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

rq request to be initialized

Name

blk_requeue_request — put a request back on queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_requeue_request (struct request_queue * q, struct request *
rq);
```

Arguments

q request queue where request should be inserted

rq request to be inserted

Description

Drivers often keep queueing requests until the hardware cannot accept more, when that condition happens we need to put the request back on the queue. Must be called with queue lock held.

Name

part_round_stats — Round off the performance stats on a struct disk_stats.

Synopsis

```
void part_round_stats (int cpu, struct hd_struct * part);
```

Arguments

cpu cpu number for stats access

part target partition

Description

The average IO queue length and utilisation statistics are maintained by observing the current state of the queue length and the amount of time it has been in this state for.

Normally, that accounting is done on IO completion, but that can result in more than a second's worth of IO being accounted for within any one second, leading to >100% utilisation. To deal with that, we call this function to do a round-off before returning the results when reading /proc/diskstats. This accounts immediately for all queue usage up to the current jiffies and restarts the counters again.

Name

generic_make_request — hand a buffer to its device driver for I/O

Synopsis

```
blk_qc_t generic_make_request (struct bio * bio);
```

Arguments

bio The bio describing the location in memory and on the device.

Description

`generic_make_request` is used to make I/O requests of block devices. It is passed a struct bio, which describes the I/O that needs to be done.

`generic_make_request` does not return any status. The success/failure status of the request, along with notification of completion, is delivered asynchronously through the bio->bi_end_io function described (one day) else where.

The caller of generic_make_request must make sure that bi_io_vec are set to describe the memory buffer, and that bi_dev and bi_sector are set to describe the device address, and the bi_end_io and optionally bi_private are set to describe how completion notification should be signaled.

generic_make_request and the drivers it calls may use bi_next if this bio happens to be merged with someone else, and may resubmit the bio to a lower device by calling into generic_make_request recursively, which means the bio should NOT be touched after the call to ->make_request_fn.

Name

submit_bio — submit a bio to the block device layer for I/O

Synopsis

```
blk_qc_t submit_bio (struct bio * bio);
```

Arguments

bio The struct bio which describes the I/O

Description

`submit_bio` is very similar in purpose to `generic_make_request`, and uses that function to do most of the work. Both are fairly rough interfaces; *bio* must be presetup and ready for I/O.

Name

blk_insert_cloned_request — Helper for stacking drivers to submit a request

Synopsis

```
int blk_insert_cloned_request (struct request_queue * q, struct request
* rq);
```

Arguments

q the queue to submit the request

rq the request being queued

Name

blk_rq_err_bytes — determine number of bytes till the next failure boundary

Synopsis

```
unsigned int blk_rq_err_bytes (const struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

rq request to examine

Description

A request could be merge of IOs which require different failure handling. This function determines the number of bytes which can be failed from the beginning of the request without crossing into area which need to be retried further.

Return

The number of bytes to fail.

Context

queue_lock must be held.

Name

blk_peek_request — peek at the top of a request queue

Synopsis

```
struct request * blk_peek_request (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q request queue to peek at

Description

Return the request at the top of *q*. The returned request should be started using `blk_start_request` before LLD starts processing it.

Return

Pointer to the request at the top of *q* if available. Null otherwise.

Context

queue_lock must be held.

Name

blk_start_request — start request processing on the driver

Synopsis

```
void blk_start_request (struct request * req);
```

Arguments

req request to dequeue

Description

Dequeue *req* and start timeout timer on it. This hands off the request to the driver.

Block internal functions which don't want to start timer should call `blk_dequeue_request`.

Context

queue_lock must be held.

Name

blk_fetch_request — fetch a request from a request queue

Synopsis

```
struct request * blk_fetch_request (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q request queue to fetch a request from

Description

Return the request at the top of *q*. The request is started on return and LLD can start processing it immediately.

Return

Pointer to the request at the top of *q* if available. Null otherwise.

Context

queue_lock must be held.

Name

blk_update_request — Special helper function for request stacking drivers

Synopsis

```
bool blk_update_request (struct request * req, int error, unsigned int
nr_bytes);
```

Arguments

req	the request being processed
error	0 for success, < 0 for error
nr_bytes	number of bytes to complete *req*

Description

Ends I/O on a number of bytes attached to *req*, but doesn't complete the request structure even if *req* doesn't have leftover. If *req* has leftover, sets it up for the next range of segments.

This special helper function is only for request stacking drivers (e.g. request-based dm) so that they can handle partial completion. Actual device drivers should use blk_end_request instead.

Passing the result of blk_rq_bytes as *nr_bytes* guarantees false return from this function.

Return

false - this request doesn't have any more data true - this request has more data

Name

blk_unprep_request — unprepare a request

Synopsis

```
void blk_unprep_request (struct request * req);
```

Arguments

req the request

Description

This function makes a request ready for complete resubmission (or completion). It happens only after all error handling is complete, so represents the appropriate moment to deallocate any resources that were allocated to the request in the prep_rq_fn. The queue lock is held when calling this.

Name

blk_end_request — Helper function for drivers to complete the request.

Synopsis

```
bool blk_end_request (struct request * rq, int error, unsigned int nr_bytes);
```

Arguments

rq	the request being processed
error	0 for success, < 0 for error
nr_bytes	number of bytes to complete

Description

Ends I/O on a number of bytes attached to *rq*. If *rq* has leftover, sets it up for the next range of segments.

Return

false - we are done with this request true - still buffers pending for this request

Name

blk_end_request_all — Helper function for drives to finish the request.

Synopsis

```
void blk_end_request_all (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish

error `0` for success, < `0` for error

Description

Completely finish *rq*.

Name

blk_end_request_cur — Helper function to finish the current request chunk.

Synopsis

```
bool blk_end_request_cur (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish the current chunk for

error `0` for success, < `0` for error

Description

Complete the current consecutively mapped chunk from *rq*.

Return

`false` - we are done with this request `true` - still buffers pending for this request

Name

blk_end_request_err — Finish a request till the next failure boundary.

Synopsis

```
bool blk_end_request_err (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish till the next failure boundary for

error must be negative errno

Description

Complete *rq* till the next failure boundary.

Return

`false` - we are done with this request `true` - still buffers pending for this request

Name

__blk_end_request — Helper function for drivers to complete the request.

Synopsis

```
bool __blk_end_request (struct request * rq, int error, unsigned int nr_bytes);
```

Arguments

rq	the request being processed
error	`0` for success, < `0` for error
nr_bytes	number of bytes to complete

Description

Must be called with queue lock held unlike `blk_end_request`.

Return

`false` - we are done with this request `true` - still buffers pending for this request

Name

__blk_end_request_all — Helper function for drives to finish the request.

Synopsis

```
void __blk_end_request_all (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish

error `0` for success, < `0` for error

Description

Completely finish *rq*. Must be called with queue lock held.

Name

__blk_end_request_cur — Helper function to finish the current request chunk.

Synopsis

```
bool __blk_end_request_cur (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish the current chunk for

error `0` for success, < `0` for error

Description

Complete the current consecutively mapped chunk from *rq*. Must be called with queue lock held.

Return

`false` - we are done with this request `true` - still buffers pending for this request

Name

__blk_end_request_err — Finish a request till the next failure boundary.

Synopsis

```
bool __blk_end_request_err (struct request * rq, int error);
```

Arguments

rq the request to finish till the next failure boundary for

error must be negative errno

Description

Complete *rq* till the next failure boundary. Must be called with queue lock held.

Return

`false` - we are done with this request `true` - still buffers pending for this request

Name

rq_flush_dcache_pages — Helper function to flush all pages in a request

Synopsis

```
void rq_flush_dcache_pages (struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

rq the request to be flushed

Description

Flush all pages in *rq*.

Name

blk_lld_busy — Check if underlying low-level drivers of a device are busy

Synopsis

```
int blk_lld_busy (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device being checked

Description

Check if underlying low-level drivers of a device are busy. If the drivers want to export their busy state, they must set own exporting function using `blk_queue_lld_busy` first.

Basically, this function is used only by request stacking drivers to stop dispatching requests to underlying devices when underlying devices are busy. This behavior helps more I/O merging on the queue of the request stacking driver and prevents I/O throughput regression on burst I/O load.

Return

0 - Not busy (The request stacking driver should dispatch request) 1 - Busy (The request stacking driver should stop dispatching request)

Name

blk_rq_unprep_clone — Helper function to free all bios in a cloned request

Synopsis

```
void blk_rq_unprep_clone (struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

rq the clone request to be cleaned up

Description

Free all bios in *rq* for a cloned request.

Name

blk_rq_prep_clone — Helper function to setup clone request

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_prep_clone (struct request * rq, struct request * rq_src,
struct bio_set * bs, gfp_t gfp_mask, int (*bio_ctr) (struct bio *,
struct bio *, void *), void * data);
```

Arguments

rq	the request to be setup
rq_src	original request to be cloned
bs	bio_set that bios for clone are allocated from
gfp_mask	memory allocation mask for bio
bio_ctr	setup function to be called for each clone bio. Returns `0` for success, non `0` for failure.
data	private data to be passed to *bio_ctr*

Description

Clones bios in *rq_src* to *rq*, and copies attributes of *rq_src* to *rq*. The actual data parts of *rq_src* (e.g. ->cmd, ->sense) are not copied, and copying such parts is the caller's responsibility. Also, pages which the original bios are pointing to are not copied and the cloned bios just point same pages. So cloned bios must be completed before original bios, which means the caller must complete *rq* before *rq_src*.

Name

blk_start_plug — initialize blk_plug and track it inside the task_struct

Synopsis

```
void blk_start_plug (struct blk_plug * plug);
```

Arguments

plug The struct blk_plug that needs to be initialized

Description

Tracking blk_plug inside the task_struct will help with auto-flushing the pending I/O should the task end up blocking between `blk_start_plug` and `blk_finish_plug`. This is important from a performance perspective, but also ensures that we don't deadlock. For instance, if the task is blocking for a memory allocation, memory reclaim could end up wanting to free a page belonging to that request that is currently residing in our private plug. By flushing the pending I/O when the process goes to sleep, we avoid this kind of deadlock.

Name

blk_pm_runtime_init — Block layer runtime PM initialization routine

Synopsis

```
void blk_pm_runtime_init (struct request_queue * q, struct device * dev);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

dev the device the queue belongs to

Description

Initialize runtime-PM-related fields for *q* and start auto suspend for *dev*. Drivers that want to take advantage of request-based runtime PM should call this function after *dev* has been initialized, and its request queue *q* has been allocated, and runtime PM for it can not happen yet(either due to disabled/forbidden or its usage_count > 0). In most cases, driver should call this function before any I/O has taken place.

This function takes care of setting up using auto suspend for the device, the autosuspend delay is set to -1 to make runtime suspend impossible until an updated value is either set by user or by driver. Drivers do not need to touch other autosuspend settings.

The block layer runtime PM is request based, so only works for drivers that use request as their IO unit instead of those directly use bio's.

Name

blk_pre_runtime_suspend — Pre runtime suspend check

Synopsis

```
int blk_pre_runtime_suspend (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

Description

This function will check if runtime suspend is allowed for the device by examining if there are any requests pending in the queue. If there are requests pending, the device can not be runtime suspended; otherwise, the queue's status will be updated to SUSPENDING and the driver can proceed to suspend the device.

For the not allowed case, we mark last busy for the device so that runtime PM core will try to autosuspend it some time later.

This function should be called near the start of the device's runtime_suspend callback.

Return

0 - OK to runtime suspend the device -EBUSY - Device should not be runtime suspended

Name

blk_post_runtime_suspend — Post runtime suspend processing

Synopsis

```
void blk_post_runtime_suspend (struct request_queue * q, int err);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

err return value of the device's runtime_suspend function

Description

Update the queue's runtime status according to the return value of the device's runtime suspend function and mark last busy for the device so that PM core will try to auto suspend the device at a later time.

This function should be called near the end of the device's runtime_suspend callback.

Name

blk_pre_runtime_resume — Pre runtime resume processing

Synopsis

```
void blk_pre_runtime_resume (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

Description

Update the queue's runtime status to RESUMING in preparation for the runtime resume of the device.

This function should be called near the start of the device's runtime_resume callback.

Name

blk_post_runtime_resume — Post runtime resume processing

Synopsis

```
void blk_post_runtime_resume (struct request_queue * q, int err);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

err return value of the device's runtime_resume function

Description

Update the queue's runtime status according to the return value of the device's runtime_resume function. If it is successfully resumed, process the requests that are queued into the device's queue when it is resuming and then mark last busy and initiate autosuspend for it.

This function should be called near the end of the device's runtime_resume callback.

Name

blk_set_runtime_active — Force runtime status of the queue to be active

Synopsis

```
void blk_set_runtime_active (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the queue of the device

Description

If the device is left runtime suspended during system suspend the resume hook typically resumes the device and corrects runtime status accordingly. However, that does not affect the queue runtime PM status which is still “suspended”. This prevents processing requests from the queue.

This function can be used in driver's resume hook to correct queue runtime PM status and re-enable peeking requests from the queue. It should be called before first request is added to the queue.

Name

__blk_drain_queue — drain requests from request_queue

Synopsis

```
void __blk_drain_queue (struct request_queue * q, bool drain_all);
```

Arguments

q	queue to drain
drain_all	whether to drain all requests or only the ones w/ ELVPRIV

Description

Drain requests from *q*. If *drain_all* is set, all requests are drained. If not, only ELVPRIV requests are drained. The caller is responsible for ensuring that no new requests which need to be drained are queued.

Name

rq_ioc — determine io_context for request allocation

Synopsis

```
struct io_context * rq_ioc (struct bio * bio);
```

Arguments

bio request being allocated is for this bio (can be NULL)

Description

Determine io_context to use for request allocation for *bio*. May return NULL if current->io_context doesn't exist.

Name

__get_request — get a free request

Synopsis

```
struct request * __get_request (struct request_list * rl, unsigned int
op, struct bio * bio, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

rl	request list to allocate from
op	operation and flags
bio	bio to allocate request for (can be NULL)
gfp_mask	allocation mask

Description

Get a free request from *q*. This function may fail under memory pressure or if *q* is dead.

Must be called with *q*->queue_lock held and, Returns ERR_PTR on failure, with *q*->queue_lock held. Returns request pointer on success, with *q*->queue_lock *not held*.

Name

get_request — get a free request

Synopsis

```
struct request * get_request (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int
op, struct bio * bio, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

q	request_queue to allocate request from
op	operation and flags
bio	bio to allocate request for (can be NULL)
gfp_mask	allocation mask

Description

Get a free request from *q*. If __GFP_DIRECT_RECLAIM is set in *gfp_mask*, this function keeps retrying under memory pressure and fails iff *q* is dead.

Must be called with *q*->queue_lock held and, Returns ERR_PTR on failure, with *q*->queue_lock held. Returns request pointer on success, with *q*->queue_lock *not held*.

Name

blk_attempt_plug_merge — try to merge with `current`'s plugged list

Synopsis

```
bool blk_attempt_plug_merge (struct request_queue * q, struct bio * bio,
unsigned int * request_count, struct request ** same_queue_rq);
```

Arguments

q	request_queue new bio is being queued at
bio	new bio being queued
request_count	out parameter for number of traversed plugged requests
same_queue_rq	pointer to struct request that gets filled in when another request associated with *q* is found on the plug list (optional, may be `NULL`)

Description

Determine whether *bio* being queued on *q* can be merged with a request on `current`'s plugged list. Returns `true` if merge was successful, otherwise `false`.

Plugging coalesces IOs from the same issuer for the same purpose without going through *q*->queue_lock. As such it's more of an issuing mechanism than scheduling, and the request, while may have elvpriv data, is not added on the elevator at this point. In addition, we don't have reliable access to the elevator outside queue lock. Only check basic merging parameters without querying the elevator.

Caller must ensure !blk_queue_nomerges(q) beforehand.

Name

blk_cloned_rq_check_limits — Helper function to check a cloned request for new the queue limits

Synopsis

```
int blk_cloned_rq_check_limits (struct request_queue * q, struct request
* rq);
```

Arguments

q the queue

rq the request being checked

Description

rq may have been made based on weaker limitations of upper-level queues in request stacking drivers, and it may violate the limitation of *q*. Since the block layer and the underlying device driver trust *rq* after it is inserted to *q*, it should be checked against *q* before the insertion using this generic function.

Request stacking drivers like request-based dm may change the queue limits when retrying requests on other queues. Those requests need to be checked against the new queue limits again during dispatch.

Name

blk_end_bidi_request — Complete a bidi request

Synopsis

```
bool blk_end_bidi_request (struct request * rq, int error, unsigned int
nr_bytes, unsigned int bidi_bytes);
```

Arguments

rq	the request to complete
error	0 for success, < 0 for error
nr_bytes	number of bytes to complete *rq*
bidi_bytes	number of bytes to complete *rq*->next_rq

Description

Ends I/O on a number of bytes attached to *rq* and *rq*->next_rq. Drivers that supports bidi can safely call this member for any type of request, bidi or uni. In the later case *bidi_bytes* is just ignored.

Return

false - we are done with this request true - still buffers pending for this request

Name

__blk_end_bidi_request — Complete a bidi request with queue lock held

Synopsis

```
bool __blk_end_bidi_request (struct request * rq, int error, unsigned int nr_bytes, unsigned int bidi_bytes);
```

Arguments

rq	the request to complete
error	0 for success, < 0 for error
nr_bytes	number of bytes to complete *rq*
bidi_bytes	number of bytes to complete *rq*->next_rq

Description

Identical to blk_end_bidi_request except that queue lock is assumed to be locked on entry and remains so on return.

Return

false - we are done with this request true - still buffers pending for this request

Name

blk_rq_map_user_iov — map user data to a request, for REQ_TYPE_BLOCK_PC usage

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_map_user_iov (struct request_queue * q, struct request *
rq, struct rq_map_data * map_data, const struct iov_iter * iter, gfp_t
gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

q	request queue where request should be inserted
rq	request to map data to
map_data	pointer to the rq_map_data holding pages (if necessary)
iter	iovec iterator
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags

Description

Data will be mapped directly for zero copy I/O, if possible. Otherwise a kernel bounce buffer is used.

A matching `blk_rq_unmap_user` must be issued at the end of I/O, while still in process context.

Note

The mapped bio may need to be bounced through `blk_queue_bounce` before being submitted to the device, as pages mapped may be out of reach. It's the callers responsibility to make sure this happens. The original bio must be passed back in to `blk_rq_unmap_user` for proper unmapping.

Name

blk_rq_unmap_user — unmap a request with user data

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_unmap_user (struct bio * bio);
```

Arguments

bio start of bio list

Description

Unmap a rq previously mapped by `blk_rq_map_user`. The caller must supply the original rq->bio from the `blk_rq_map_user` return, since the I/O completion may have changed rq->bio.

Name

blk_rq_map_kern — map kernel data to a request, for REQ_TYPE_BLOCK_PC usage

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_map_kern (struct request_queue * q, struct request * rq, void
* kbuf, unsigned int len, gfp_t gfp_mask);
```

Arguments

q	request queue where request should be inserted
rq	request to fill
kbuf	the kernel buffer
len	length of user data
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags

Description

Data will be mapped directly if possible. Otherwise a bounce buffer is used. Can be called multiple times to append multiple buffers.

Name

blk_release_queue — release a struct request_queue when it is no longer needed

Synopsis

```
void blk_release_queue (struct kobject * kobj);
```

Arguments

kobj the kobj belonging to the request queue to be released

Description

blk_release_queue is the pair to `blk_init_queue` or `blk_queue_make_request`. It should be called when a request queue is being released; typically when a block device is being de-registered. Currently, its primary task it to free all the struct request structures that were allocated to the queue and the queue itself.

Note

The low level driver must have finished any outstanding requests first via `blk_cleanup_queue`.

Name

blk_queue_prep_rq — set a prepare_request function for queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_prep_rq (struct request_queue * q, prep_rq_fn * pfn);
```

Arguments

q queue

pfn prepare_request function

Description

It's possible for a queue to register a prepare_request callback which is invoked before the request is handed to the request_fn. The goal of the function is to prepare a request for I/O, it can be used to build a cdb from the request data for instance.

Name

blk_queue_unprep_rq — set an unprepare_request function for queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_unprep_rq (struct request_queue * q, unprep_rq_fn * ufn);
```

Arguments

q queue

ufn unprepare_request function

Description

It's possible for a queue to register an unprepare_request callback which is invoked before the request is finally completed. The goal of the function is to deallocate any data that was allocated in the prepare_request callback.

Name

blk_set_default_limits — reset limits to default values

Synopsis

```
void blk_set_default_limits (struct queue_limits * lim);
```

Arguments

lim the queue_limits structure to reset

Description

Returns a queue_limit struct to its default state.

Name

blk_set_stacking_limits — set default limits for stacking devices

Synopsis

```
void blk_set_stacking_limits (struct queue_limits * lim);
```

Arguments

lim the queue_limits structure to reset

Description

Returns a queue_limit struct to its default state. Should be used by stacking drivers like DM that have no internal limits.

Name

blk_queue_make_request — define an alternate make_request function for a device

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_make_request (struct request_queue * q, make_request_fn
* mfn);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device to be affected

mfn the alternate make_request function

Description

The normal way for struct bios to be passed to a device driver is for them to be collected into requests on a request queue, and then to allow the device driver to select requests off that queue when it is ready. This works well for many block devices. However some block devices (typically virtual devices such as md or lvm) do not benefit from the processing on the request queue, and are served best by having the requests passed directly to them. This can be achieved by providing a function to `blk_queue_make_request`.

Caveat

The driver that does this *must* be able to deal appropriately with buffers in “highmemory”. This can be accomplished by either calling `__bio_kmap_atomic` to get a temporary kernel mapping, or by calling `blk_queue_bounce` to create a buffer in normal memory.

Name

blk_queue_bounce_limit — set bounce buffer limit for queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_bounce_limit (struct request_queue * q, u64 max_addr);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_addr	the maximum address the device can handle

Description

Different hardware can have different requirements as to what pages it can do I/O directly to. A low level driver can call blk_queue_bounce_limit to have lower memory pages allocated as bounce buffers for doing I/O to pages residing above *max_addr*.

Name

blk_queue_max_hw_sectors — set max sectors for a request for this queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_hw_sectors (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int max_hw_sectors);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_hw_sectors	max hardware sectors in the usual 512b unit

Description

Enables a low level driver to set a hard upper limit, max_hw_sectors, on the size of requests. max_hw_sectors is set by the device driver based upon the capabilities of the I/O controller.

max_dev_sectors is a hard limit imposed by the storage device for READ/WRITE requests. It is set by the disk driver.

max_sectors is a soft limit imposed by the block layer for filesystem type requests. This value can be overridden on a per-device basis in /sys/block/<device>/queue/max_sectors_kb. The soft limit can not exceed max_hw_sectors.

Name

blk_queue_chunk_sectors — set size of the chunk for this queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_chunk_sectors (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int chunk_sectors);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
chunk_sectors	chunk sectors in the usual 512b unit

Description

If a driver doesn't want IOs to cross a given chunk size, it can set this limit and prevent merging across chunks. Note that the chunk size must currently be a power-of-2 in sectors. Also note that the block layer must accept a page worth of data at any offset. So if the crossing of chunks is a hard limitation in the driver, it must still be prepared to split single page bios.

Name

blk_queue_max_discard_sectors — set max sectors for a single discard

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_discard_sectors (struct request_queue * q, unsigned
int max_discard_sectors);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_discard_sectors	maximum number of sectors to discard

Name

blk_queue_max_write_same_sectors — set max sectors for a single write same

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_write_same_sectors (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int max_write_same_sectors);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_write_same_sectors	maximum number of sectors to write per command

Name

blk_queue_max_write_zeroes_sectors — set max sectors for a single write zeroes

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_write_zeroes_sectors (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int max_write_zeroes_sectors);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_write_zeroes_sectors	maximum number of sectors to write per command

Name

blk_queue_max_segments — set max hw segments for a request for this queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_segments (struct request_queue * q, unsigned short max_segments);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_segments	max number of segments

Description

Enables a low level driver to set an upper limit on the number of hw data segments in a request.

Name

blk_queue_max_segment_size — set max segment size for blk_rq_map_sg

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_max_segment_size (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int max_size);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
max_size	max size of segment in bytes

Description

Enables a low level driver to set an upper limit on the size of a coalesced segment

Name

blk_queue_logical_block_size — set logical block size for the queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_logical_block_size (struct request_queue * q, unsigned short size);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

size the logical block size, in bytes

Description

This should be set to the lowest possible block size that the storage device can address. The default of 512 covers most hardware.

Name

blk_queue_physical_block_size — set physical block size for the queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_physical_block_size (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int size);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

size the physical block size, in bytes

Description

This should be set to the lowest possible sector size that the hardware can operate on without reverting to read-modify-write operations.

Name

blk_queue_alignment_offset — set physical block alignment offset

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_alignment_offset (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int offset);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
offset	alignment offset in bytes

Description

Some devices are naturally misaligned to compensate for things like the legacy DOS partition table 63-sector offset. Low-level drivers should call this function for devices whose first sector is not naturally aligned.

Name

blk_limits_io_min — set minimum request size for a device

Synopsis

```
void blk_limits_io_min (struct queue_limits * limits, unsigned int min);
```

Arguments

limits the queue limits

min smallest I/O size in bytes

Description

Some devices have an internal block size bigger than the reported hardware sector size. This function can be used to signal the smallest I/O the device can perform without incurring a performance penalty.

Name

blk_queue_io_min — set minimum request size for the queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_io_min (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int min);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

min smallest I/O size in bytes

Description

Storage devices may report a granularity or preferred minimum I/O size which is the smallest request the device can perform without incurring a performance penalty. For disk drives this is often the physical block size. For RAID arrays it is often the stripe chunk size. A properly aligned multiple of minimum_io_size is the preferred request size for workloads where a high number of I/O operations is desired.

Name

blk_limits_io_opt — set optimal request size for a device

Synopsis

```
void blk_limits_io_opt (struct queue_limits * limits, unsigned int opt);
```

Arguments

limits the queue limits

opt smallest I/O size in bytes

Description

Storage devices may report an optimal I/O size, which is the device's preferred unit for sustained I/O. This is rarely reported for disk drives. For RAID arrays it is usually the stripe width or the internal track size. A properly aligned multiple of optimal_io_size is the preferred request size for workloads where sustained throughput is desired.

Name

blk_queue_io_opt — set optimal request size for the queue

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_io_opt (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int opt);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

opt optimal request size in bytes

Description

Storage devices may report an optimal I/O size, which is the device's preferred unit for sustained I/O. This is rarely reported for disk drives. For RAID arrays it is usually the stripe width or the internal track size. A properly aligned multiple of optimal_io_size is the preferred request size for workloads where sustained throughput is desired.

Name

blk_queue_stack_limits — inherit underlying queue limits for stacked drivers

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_stack_limits (struct request_queue * t, struct request_queue * b);
```

Arguments

t the stacking driver (top)

b the underlying device (bottom)

Name

blk_stack_limits — adjust queue_limits for stacked devices

Synopsis

```
int blk_stack_limits (struct queue_limits * t, struct queue_limits *
b, sector_t start);
```

Arguments

t the stacking driver limits (top device)

b the underlying queue limits (bottom, component device)

start first data sector within component device

Description

This function is used by stacking drivers like MD and DM to ensure that all component devices have compatible block sizes and alignments. The stacking driver must provide a queue_limits struct (top) and then iteratively call the stacking function for all component (bottom) devices. The stacking function will attempt to combine the values and ensure proper alignment.

Returns 0 if the top and bottom queue_limits are compatible. The top device's block sizes and alignment offsets may be adjusted to ensure alignment with the bottom device. If no compatible sizes and alignments exist, -1 is returned and the resulting top queue_limits will have the misaligned flag set to indicate that the alignment_offset is undefined.

Name

bdev_stack_limits — adjust queue limits for stacked drivers

Synopsis

```
int bdev_stack_limits (struct queue_limits * t, struct block_device *
bdev, sector_t start);
```

Arguments

t the stacking driver limits (top device)

bdev the component block_device (bottom)

start first data sector within component device

Description

Merges queue limits for a top device and a block_device. Returns 0 if alignment didn't change. Returns -1 if adding the bottom device caused misalignment.

Name

disk_stack_limits — adjust queue limits for stacked drivers

Synopsis

```
void disk_stack_limits (struct gendisk * disk, struct block_device *
bdev, sector_t offset);
```

Arguments

disk MD/DM gendisk (top)

bdev the underlying block device (bottom)

offset offset to beginning of data within component device

Description

Merges the limits for a top level gendisk and a bottom level block_device.

Name

blk_queue_dma_pad — set pad mask

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_dma_pad (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask pad mask

Description

Set dma pad mask.

Appending pad buffer to a request modifies the last entry of a scatter list such that it includes the pad buffer.

Name

blk_queue_update_dma_pad — update pad mask

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_update_dma_pad (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask pad mask

Description

Update dma pad mask.

Appending pad buffer to a request modifies the last entry of a scatter list such that it includes the pad buffer.

Name

blk_queue_dma_drain — Set up a drain buffer for excess dma.

Synopsis

```
int blk_queue_dma_drain (struct request_queue * q, dma_drain_needed_fn
* dma_drain_needed, void * buf, unsigned int size);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
dma_drain_needed	fn which returns non-zero if drain is necessary
buf	physically contiguous buffer
size	size of the buffer in bytes

Description

Some devices have excess DMA problems and can't simply discard (or zero fill) the unwanted piece of the transfer. They have to have a real area of memory to transfer it into. The use case for this is ATAPI devices in DMA mode. If the packet command causes a transfer bigger than the transfer size some HBAs will lock up if there aren't DMA elements to contain the excess transfer. What this API does is adjust the queue so that the buf is always appended silently to the scatterlist.

Note

This routine adjusts max_hw_segments to make room for appending the drain buffer. If you call `blk_queue_max_segments` after calling this routine, you must set the limit to one fewer than your device can support otherwise there won't be room for the drain buffer.

Name

blk_queue_segment_boundary — set boundary rules for segment merging

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_segment_boundary (struct request_queue * q, unsigned long mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask the memory boundary mask

Name

blk_queue_virt_boundary — set boundary rules for bio merging

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_virt_boundary (struct request_queue * q, unsigned long mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask the memory boundary mask

Name

blk_queue_dma_alignment — set dma length and memory alignment

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_dma_alignment (struct request_queue * q, int mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask alignment mask

description

set required memory and length alignment for direct dma transactions. this is used when building direct io requests for the queue.

Name

blk_queue_update_dma_alignment — update dma length and memory alignment

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_update_dma_alignment (struct request_queue * q, int mask);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

mask alignment mask

description

update required memory and length alignment for direct dma transactions. If the requested alignment is larger than the current alignment, then the current queue alignment is updated to the new value, otherwise it is left alone. The design of this is to allow multiple objects (driver, device, transport etc) to set their respective alignments without having them interfere.

Name

blk_set_queue_depth — tell the block layer about the device queue depth

Synopsis

```
void blk_set_queue_depth (struct request_queue * q, unsigned int depth);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

depth queue depth

Name

blk_queue_write_cache — configure queue's write cache

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_write_cache (struct request_queue * q, bool wc, bool fua);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

wc write back cache on or off

fua device supports FUA writes, if true

Description

Tell the block layer about the write cache of *q*.

Name

blk_execute_rq_nowait — insert a request into queue for execution

Synopsis

```
void blk_execute_rq_nowait (struct request_queue * q, struct gendisk *
bd_disk, struct request * rq, int at_head, rq_end_io_fn * done);
```

Arguments

q	queue to insert the request in
bd_disk	matching gendisk
rq	request to insert
at_head	insert request at head or tail of queue
done	I/O completion handler

Description

Insert a fully prepared request at the back of the I/O scheduler queue for execution. Don't wait for completion.

Note

This function will invoke *done* directly if the queue is dead.

Name

blk_execute_rq — insert a request into queue for execution

Synopsis

```
int blk_execute_rq (struct request_queue * q, struct gendisk * bd_disk,
struct request * rq, int at_head);
```

Arguments

q	queue to insert the request in
bd_disk	matching gendisk
rq	request to insert
at_head	insert request at head or tail of queue

Description

Insert a fully prepared request at the back of the I/O scheduler queue for execution and wait for completion.

Name

blkdev_issue_flush — queue a flush

Synopsis

```
int blkdev_issue_flush (struct block_device * bdev, gfp_t gfp_mask,
sector_t * error_sector);
```

Arguments

bdev	blockdev to issue flush for
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags (for bio_alloc)
error_sector	error sector

Description

Issue a flush for the block device in question. Caller can supply room for storing the error offset in case of a flush error, if they wish to. If WAIT flag is not passed then caller may check only what request was pushed in some internal queue for later handling.

Name

blkdev_issue_discard — queue a discard

Synopsis

```
int blkdev_issue_discard (struct block_device * bdev, sector_t sector,
sector_t nr_sects, gfp_t gfp_mask, unsigned long flags);
```

Arguments

bdev	blockdev to issue discard for
sector	start sector
nr_sects	number of sectors to discard
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags (for bio_alloc)
flags	BLKDEV_IFL_* flags to control behaviour

Description

Issue a discard request for the sectors in question.

Name

blkdev_issue_write_same — queue a write same operation

Synopsis

```
int blkdev_issue_write_same (struct block_device * bdev, sector_t sector, sector_t nr_sects, gfp_t gfp_mask, struct page * page);
```

Arguments

bdev	target blockdev
sector	start sector
nr_sects	number of sectors to write
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags (for bio_alloc)
page	page containing data

Description

Issue a write same request for the sectors in question.

Name

__blkdev_issue_zeroout — generate number of zero filed write bios

Synopsis

```
int __blkdev_issue_zeroout (struct block_device * bdev, sector_t sector,
sector_t nr_sects, gfp_t gfp_mask, struct bio ** biop, bool discard);
```

Arguments

bdev	blockdev to issue
sector	start sector
nr_sects	number of sectors to write
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags (for bio_alloc)
biop	pointer to anchor bio
discard	discard flag

Description

Generate and issue number of bios with zerofiled pages.

Name

blkdev_issue_zeroout — zero-fill a block range

Synopsis

```
int blkdev_issue_zeroout (struct block_device * bdev, sector_t sector,
sector_t nr_sects, gfp_t gfp_mask, bool discard);
```

Arguments

bdev	blockdev to write
sector	start sector
nr_sects	number of sectors to write
gfp_mask	memory allocation flags (for bio_alloc)
discard	whether to discard the block range

Description

Zero-fill a block range. If the discard flag is set and the block device guarantees that subsequent READ operations to the block range in question will return zeroes, the blocks will be discarded. Should the discard request fail, if the discard flag is not set, or if discard_zeroes_data is not supported, this function will resort to zeroing the blocks manually, thus provisioning (allocating, anchoring) them. If the block device supports WRITE ZEROES or WRITE SAME command(s), `blkdev_issue_zeroout` will use it to optimize the process of clearing the block range. Otherwise the zeroing will be performed using regular WRITE calls.

Name

blk_queue_find_tag — find a request by its tag and queue

Synopsis

```
struct request * blk_queue_find_tag (struct request_queue * q, int tag);
```

Arguments

q The request queue for the device

tag The tag of the request

Notes

Should be used when a device returns a tag and you want to match it with a request.

no locks need be held.

Name

blk_free_tags — release a given set of tag maintenance info

Synopsis

```
void blk_free_tags (struct blk_queue_tag * bqt);
```

Arguments

bqt the tag map to free

Description

Drop the reference count on *bqt* and frees it when the last reference is dropped.

Name

blk_queue_free_tags — release tag maintenance info

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_free_tags (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

Notes

This is used to disable tagged queuing to a device, yet leave queue in function.

Name

blk_init_tags — initialize the tag info for an external tag map

Synopsis

```
struct blk_queue_tag * blk_init_tags (int depth, int alloc_policy);
```

Arguments

depth	the maximum queue depth supported
alloc_policy	tag allocation policy

Name

blk_queue_init_tags — initialize the queue tag info

Synopsis

```
int blk_queue_init_tags (struct request_queue * q, int depth, struct
blk_queue_tag * tags, int alloc_policy);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
depth	the maximum queue depth supported
tags	the tag to use
alloc_policy	tag allocation policy

Description

Queue lock must be held here if the function is called to resize an existing map.

Name

blk_queue_resize_tags — change the queueing depth

Synopsis

```
int blk_queue_resize_tags (struct request_queue * q, int new_depth);
```

Arguments

q	the request queue for the device
new_depth	the new max command queueing depth

Notes

Must be called with the queue lock held.

Name

blk_queue_end_tag — end tag operations for a request

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_end_tag (struct request_queue * q, struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

rq the request that has completed

Description

Typically called when `end_that_request_first` returns `0`, meaning all transfers have been done for a request. It's important to call this function before `end_that_request_last`, as that will put the request back on the free list thus corrupting the internal tag list.

Notes

queue lock must be held.

Name

blk_queue_start_tag — find a free tag and assign it

Synopsis

```
int blk_queue_start_tag (struct request_queue * q, struct request * rq);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

rq the block request that needs tagging

Description

This can either be used as a stand-alone helper, or possibly be assigned as the queue prep_rq_fn (in which case struct request automagically gets a tag assigned). Note that this function assumes that any type of request can be queued! if this is not true for your device, you must check the request type before calling this function. The request will also be removed from the request queue, so it's the drivers responsibility to readd it if it should need to be restarted for some reason.

Notes

queue lock must be held.

Name

blk_queue_invalidate_tags — invalidate all pending tags

Synopsis

```
void blk_queue_invalidate_tags (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

Description

Hardware conditions may dictate a need to stop all pending requests. In this case, we will safely clear the block side of the tag queue and readd all requests to the request queue in the right order.

Notes

queue lock must be held.

Name

__blk_queue_free_tags — release tag maintenance info

Synopsis

```
void __blk_queue_free_tags (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the request queue for the device

Notes

`blk_cleanup_queue` will take care of calling this function, if tagging has been used. So there's no need to call this directly.

Name

blk_rq_count_integrity_sg — Count number of integrity scatterlist elements

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_count_integrity_sg (struct request_queue * q, struct bio *
bio);
```

Arguments

q request queue

bio bio with integrity metadata attached

Description

Returns the number of elements required in a scatterlist corresponding to the integrity metadata in a bio.

Name

blk_rq_map_integrity_sg — Map integrity metadata into a scatterlist

Synopsis

```
int blk_rq_map_integrity_sg (struct request_queue * q, struct bio * bio,
struct scatterlist * sglist);
```

Arguments

q	request queue
bio	bio with integrity metadata attached
sglist	target scatterlist

Description

Map the integrity vectors in request into a scatterlist. The scatterlist must be big enough to hold all elements. I.e. sized using `blk_rq_count_integrity_sg`.

Name

blk_integrity_compare — Compare integrity profile of two disks

Synopsis

```
int blk_integrity_compare (struct gendisk * gd1, struct gendisk * gd2);
```

Arguments

gd1 Disk to compare

gd2 Disk to compare

Description

Meta-devices like DM and MD need to verify that all sub-devices use the same integrity format before advertising to upper layers that they can send/receive integrity metadata. This function can be used to check whether two gendisk devices have compatible integrity formats.

Name

blk_integrity_register — Register a gendisk as being integrity-capable

Synopsis

```
void blk_integrity_register (struct gendisk * disk, struct blk_integrity
* template);
```

Arguments

disk	struct gendisk pointer to make integrity-aware
template	block integrity profile to register

Description

When a device needs to advertise itself as being able to send/receive integrity metadata it must use this function to register the capability with the block layer. The template is a blk_integrity struct with values appropriate for the underlying hardware. See Documentation/block/data-integrity.txt.

Name

blk_integrity_unregister — Unregister block integrity profile

Synopsis

```
void blk_integrity_unregister (struct gendisk * disk);
```

Arguments

disk disk whose integrity profile to unregister

Description

This function unregisters the integrity capability from a block device.

Name

blk_trace_ioctl — handle the ioctls associated with tracing

Synopsis

```
int blk_trace_ioctl (struct block_device * bdev, unsigned cmd, char
__user * arg);
```

Arguments

bdev the block device

cmd the ioctl cmd

arg the argument data, if any

Name

blk_trace_shutdown — stop and cleanup trace structures

Synopsis

```
void blk_trace_shutdown (struct request_queue * q);
```

Arguments

q the request queue associated with the device

Name

blk_add_trace_rq — Add a trace for a request oriented action

Synopsis

```
void blk_add_trace_rq (struct request_queue * q, struct request * rq,
unsigned int nr_bytes, u32 what);
```

Arguments

q	queue the io is for
rq	the source request
nr_bytes	number of completed bytes
what	the action

Description

Records an action against a request. Will log the bio offset + size.

Name

blk_add_trace_bio — Add a trace for a bio oriented action

Synopsis

```
void blk_add_trace_bio (struct request_queue * q, struct bio * bio, u32 what, int error);
```

Arguments

q queue the io is for

bio the source bio

what the action

error error, if any

Description

Records an action against a bio. Will log the bio offset + size.

Name

blk_add_trace_bio_remap — Add a trace for a bio-remap operation

Synopsis

```
void blk_add_trace_bio_remap (void * ignore, struct request_queue * q,
struct bio * bio, dev_t dev, sector_t from);
```

Arguments

ignore trace callback data parameter (not used)

q queue the io is for

bio the source bio

dev target device

from source sector

Description

Device mapper or raid target sometimes need to split a bio because it spans a stripe (or similar). Add a trace for that action.

Name

blk_add_trace_rq_remap — Add a trace for a request-remap operation

Synopsis

```
void blk_add_trace_rq_remap (void * ignore, struct request_queue * q,
struct request * rq, dev_t dev, sector_t from);
```

Arguments

ignore trace callback data parameter (not used)

q queue the io is for

rq the source request

dev target device

from source sector

Description

Device mapper remaps request to other devices. Add a trace for that action.

Name

blk_mangle_minor — scatter minor numbers apart

Synopsis

```
int blk_mangle_minor (int minor);
```

Arguments

minor minor number to mangle

Description

Scatter consecutively allocated *minor* number apart if MANGLE_DEVT is enabled. Mangling twice gives the original value.

RETURNS

Mangled value.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

Name

blk_alloc_devt — allocate a dev_t for a partition

Synopsis

```
int blk_alloc_devt (struct hd_struct * part, dev_t * devt);
```

Arguments

part partition to allocate dev_t for

devt out parameter for resulting dev_t

Description

Allocate a dev_t for block device.

RETURNS

0 on success, allocated dev_t is returned in **devt*. -errno on failure.

CONTEXT

Might sleep.

Name

blk_free_devt — free a dev_t

Synopsis

```
void blk_free_devt (dev_t devt);
```

Arguments

devt dev_t to free

Description

Free *devt* which was allocated using `blk_alloc_devt`.

CONTEXT

Might sleep.

Name

disk_replace_part_tbl — replace disk->part_tbl in RCU-safe way

Synopsis

```
void disk_replace_part_tbl (struct gendisk * disk, struct disk_part_tbl
* new_ptbl);
```

Arguments

disk	disk to replace part_tbl for
new_ptbl	new part_tbl to install

Description

Replace disk->part_tbl with *new_ptbl* in RCU-safe way. The original ptbl is freed using RCU callback.

LOCKING

Matching bd_mutx locked.

Name

disk_expand_part_tbl — expand disk->part_tbl

Synopsis

```
int disk_expand_part_tbl (struct gendisk * disk, int partno);
```

Arguments

disk disk to expand part_tbl for

partno expand such that this partno can fit in

Description

Expand disk->part_tbl such that *partno* can fit in. disk->part_tbl uses RCU to allow unlocked dereferencing for stats and other stuff.

LOCKING

Matching bd_mutex locked, might sleep.

RETURNS

0 on success, -errno on failure.

Name

disk_block_events — block and flush disk event checking

Synopsis

```
void disk_block_events (struct gendisk * disk);
```

Arguments

disk disk to block events for

Description

On return from this function, it is guaranteed that event checking isn't in progress and won't happen until unblocked by `disk_unblock_events`. Events blocking is counted and the actual unblocking happens after the matching number of unblocks are done.

Note that this intentionally does not block event checking from `disk_clear_events`.

CONTEXT

Might sleep.

Name

disk_unblock_events — unblock disk event checking

Synopsis

```
void disk_unblock_events (struct gendisk * disk);
```

Arguments

disk disk to unblock events for

Description

Undo `disk_block_events`. When the block count reaches zero, it starts events polling if configured.

CONTEXT

Don't care. Safe to call from irq context.

Name

disk_flush_events — schedule immediate event checking and flushing

Synopsis

```
void disk_flush_events (struct gendisk * disk, unsigned int mask);
```

Arguments

disk disk to check and flush events for

mask events to flush

Description

Schedule immediate event checking on *disk* if not blocked. Events in *mask* are scheduled to be cleared from the driver. Note that this doesn't clear the events from *disk*->ev.

CONTEXT

If *mask* is non-zero must be called with bdev->bd_mutex held.

Name

disk_clear_events — synchronously check, clear and return pending events

Synopsis

```
unsigned int disk_clear_events (struct gendisk * disk, unsigned int mask);
```

Arguments

disk disk to fetch and clear events from

mask mask of events to be fetched and cleared

Description

Disk events are synchronously checked and pending events in *mask* are cleared and returned. This ignores the block count.

CONTEXT

Might sleep.

Name

disk_get_part — get partition

Synopsis

```
struct hd_struct * disk_get_part (struct gendisk * disk, int partno);
```

Arguments

disk disk to look partition from

partno partition number

Description

Look for partition *partno* from *disk*. If found, increment reference count and return it.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

RETURNS

Pointer to the found partition on success, NULL if not found.

Name

disk_part_iter_init — initialize partition iterator

Synopsis

```
void disk_part_iter_init (struct disk_part_iter * piter, struct gendisk
* disk, unsigned int flags);
```

Arguments

piter iterator to initialize

disk disk to iterate over

flags DISK_PITER_* flags

Description

Initialize *piter* so that it iterates over partitions of *disk*.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

Name

disk_part_iter_next — proceed iterator to the next partition and return it

Synopsis

```
struct hd_struct * disk_part_iter_next (struct disk_part_iter * piter);
```

Arguments

piter iterator of interest

Description

Proceed *piter* to the next partition and return it.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

Name

disk_part_iter_exit — finish up partition iteration

Synopsis

```
void disk_part_iter_exit (struct disk_part_iter * piter);
```

Arguments

piter iter of interest

Description

Called when iteration is over. Cleans up *piter*.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

Name

disk_map_sector_rcu — map sector to partition

Synopsis

```
struct hd_struct * disk_map_sector_rcu (struct gendisk * disk, sector_t sector);
```

Arguments

disk gendisk of interest

sector sector to map

Description

Find out which partition *sector* maps to on *disk*. This is primarily used for stats accounting.

CONTEXT

RCU read locked. The returned partition pointer is valid only while preemption is disabled.

RETURNS

Found partition on success, part0 is returned if no partition matches

Name

register_blkdev — register a new block device

Synopsis

```
int register_blkdev (unsigned int major, const char * name);
```

Arguments

major the requested major device number [1..255]. If *major*=0, try to allocate any unused major number.

name the name of the new block device as a zero terminated string

Description

The *name* must be unique within the system.

The return value depends on the *major* input parameter. - if a major device number was requested in range [1..255] then the function returns zero on success, or a negative error code - if any unused major number was requested with *major*=0 parameter then the return value is the allocated major number in range [1..255] or a negative error code otherwise

Name

device_add_disk — add partitioning information to kernel list

Synopsis

```
void device_add_disk (struct device * parent, struct gendisk * disk);
```

Arguments

parent parent device for the disk

disk per-device partitioning information

Description

This function registers the partitioning information in *disk* with the kernel.

FIXME

error handling

Name

get_gendisk — get partitioning information for a given device

Synopsis

```
struct gendisk * get_gendisk (dev_t devt, int * partno);
```

Arguments

devt device to get partitioning information for

partno returned partition index

Description

This function gets the structure containing partitioning information for the given device *devt*.

Name

bdget_disk — do `bdget` by gendisk and partition number

Synopsis

```
struct block_device * bdget_disk (struct gendisk * disk, int partno);
```

Arguments

`disk` gendisk of interest

`partno` partition number

Description

Find partition *`partno`* from *`disk`*, do `bdget` on it.

CONTEXT

Don't care.

RETURNS

Resulting block_device on success, NULL on failure.

Chapter 15. Char devices

Name

register_chrdev_region — register a range of device numbers

Synopsis

```
int register_chrdev_region (dev_t from, unsigned count, const char * name);
```

Arguments

from the first in the desired range of device numbers; must include the major number.

count the number of consecutive device numbers required

name the name of the device or driver.

Description

Return value is zero on success, a negative error code on failure.

Name

alloc_chrdev_region — register a range of char device numbers

Synopsis

```
int alloc_chrdev_region (dev_t * dev, unsigned baseminor, unsigned count, const char * name);
```

Arguments

dev	output parameter for first assigned number
baseminor	first of the requested range of minor numbers
count	the number of minor numbers required
name	the name of the associated device or driver

Description

Allocates a range of char device numbers. The major number will be chosen dynamically, and returned (along with the first minor number) in *dev*. Returns zero or a negative error code.

Name

__register_chrdev — create and register a cdev occupying a range of minors

Synopsis

```
int __register_chrdev (unsigned int major, unsigned int baseminor, unsigned int count, const char * name, const struct file_operations * fops);
```

Arguments

major	major device number or 0 for dynamic allocation
baseminor	first of the requested range of minor numbers
count	the number of minor numbers required
name	name of this range of devices
fops	file operations associated with this devices

Description

If *major* == 0 this functions will dynamically allocate a major and return its number.

If *major* > 0 this function will attempt to reserve a device with the given major number and will return zero on success.

Returns a -ve errno on failure.

The name of this device has nothing to do with the name of the device in /dev. It only helps to keep track of the different owners of devices. If your module name has only one type of devices it's ok to use e.g. the name of the module here.

Name

unregister_chrdev_region — unregister a range of device numbers

Synopsis

```
void unregister_chrdev_region (dev_t from, unsigned count);
```

Arguments

from the first in the range of numbers to unregister

count the number of device numbers to unregister

Description

This function will unregister a range of *count* device numbers, starting with *from*. The caller should normally be the one who allocated those numbers in the first place...

Name

__unregister_chrdev — unregister and destroy a cdev

Synopsis

```
void __unregister_chrdev (unsigned int major, unsigned int baseminor,
unsigned int count, const char * name);
```

Arguments

major	major device number
baseminor	first of the range of minor numbers
count	the number of minor numbers this cdev is occupying
name	name of this range of devices

Description

Unregister and destroy the cdev occupying the region described by *major*, *baseminor* and *count*. This function undoes what __register_chrdev did.

Name

cdev_add — add a char device to the system

Synopsis

```
int cdev_add (struct cdev * p, dev_t dev, unsigned count);
```

Arguments

p the cdev structure for the device

dev the first device number for which this device is responsible

count the number of consecutive minor numbers corresponding to this device

Description

cdev_add adds the device represented by *p* to the system, making it live immediately. A negative error code is returned on failure.

Name

cdev_del — remove a cdev from the system

Synopsis

```
void cdev_del (struct cdev * p);
```

Arguments

p the cdev structure to be removed

Description

`cdev_del` removes *p* from the system, possibly freeing the structure itself.

Name

cdev_alloc — allocate a cdev structure

Synopsis

```
struct cdev * cdev_alloc ( void);
```

Arguments

void no arguments

Description

Allocates and returns a cdev structure, or NULL on failure.

Name

cdev_init — initialize a cdev structure

Synopsis

```
void cdev_init (struct cdev * cdev, const struct file_operations * fops);
```

Arguments

cdev the structure to initialize

fops the file_operations for this device

Description

Initializes *cdev*, remembering *fops*, making it ready to add to the system with cdev_add.

Chapter 16. Miscellaneous Devices

Name

misc_register — register a miscellaneous device

Synopsis

```
int misc_register (struct miscdevice * misc);
```

Arguments

misc device structure

Description

Register a miscellaneous device with the kernel. If the minor number is set to `MISC_DYNAMIC_MINOR` a minor number is assigned and placed in the minor field of the structure. For other cases the minor number requested is used.

The structure passed is linked into the kernel and may not be destroyed until it has been unregistered. By default, an `open` syscall to the device sets file->private_data to point to the structure. Drivers don't need open in fops for this.

A zero is returned on success and a negative errno code for failure.

Name

misc_deregister — unregister a miscellaneous device

Synopsis

```
void misc_deregister (struct miscdevice * misc);
```

Arguments

misc device to unregister

Description

Unregister a miscellaneous device that was previously successfully registered with `misc_register`.

Chapter 17. Clock Framework

The clock framework defines programming interfaces to support software management of the system clock tree. This framework is widely used with System-On-Chip (SOC) platforms to support power management and various devices which may need custom clock rates. Note that these "clocks" don't relate to timekeeping or real time clocks (RTCs), each of which have separate frameworks. These struct clk instances may be used to manage for example a 96 MHz signal that is used to shift bits into and out of peripherals or busses, or otherwise trigger synchronous state machine transitions in system hardware.

Power management is supported by explicit software clock gating: unused clocks are disabled, so the system doesn't waste power changing the state of transistors that aren't in active use. On some systems this may be backed by hardware clock gating, where clocks are gated without being disabled in software. Sections of chips that are powered but not clocked may be able to retain their last state. This low power state is often called a *retention mode*. This mode still incurs leakage currents, especially with finer circuit geometries, but for CMOS circuits power is mostly used by clocked state changes.

Power-aware drivers only enable their clocks when the device they manage is in active use. Also, system sleep states often differ according to which clock domains are active: while a "standby" state may allow wakeup from several active domains, a "mem" (suspend-to-RAM) state may require a more wholesale shutdown of clocks derived from higher speed PLLs and oscillators, limiting the number of possible wake-up event sources. A driver's suspend method may need to be aware of system-specific clock constraints on the target sleep state.

Some platforms support programmable clock generators. These can be used by external chips of various kinds, such as other CPUs, multimedia codecs, and devices with strict requirements for interface clocking.

Name

struct clk_notifier — associate a clk with a notifier

Synopsis

```
struct clk_notifier {
  struct clk * clk;
  struct srcu_notifier_head notifier_head;
  struct list_head node;
};
```

Members

clk	struct clk * to associate the notifier with
notifier_head	a blocking_notifier_head for this clk
node	linked list pointers

Description

A list of struct clk_notifier is maintained by the notifier code. An entry is created whenever code registers the first notifier on a particular *`clk`*. Future notifiers on that *`clk`* are added to the *`notifier_head`*.

Name

struct clk_notifier_data — rate data to pass to the notifier callback

Synopsis

```
struct clk_notifier_data {
  struct clk * clk;
  unsigned long old_rate;
  unsigned long new_rate;
};
```

Members

clk	struct clk * being changed
old_rate	previous rate of this clk
new_rate	new rate of this clk

Description

For a pre-notifier, old_rate is the clk's rate before this rate change, and new_rate is what the rate will be in the future. For a post-notifier, old_rate and new_rate are both set to the clk's current rate (this was done to optimize the implementation).

Name

clk_notifier_register — change notifier callback

Synopsis

```
int clk_notifier_register (struct clk * clk, struct notifier_block *
nb);
```

Arguments

clk clock whose rate we are interested in

nb notifier block with callback function pointer

ProTip

debugging across notifier chains can be frustrating. Make sure that your notifier callback function prints a nice big warning in case of failure.

Name

clk_notifier_unregister — change notifier callback

Synopsis

```
int clk_notifier_unregister (struct clk * clk, struct notifier_block
* nb);
```

Arguments

clk clock whose rate we are no longer interested in

nb notifier block which will be unregistered

Name

clk_get_accuracy — obtain the clock accuracy in ppb (parts per billion) for a clock source.

Synopsis

```
long clk_get_accuracy (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

This gets the clock source accuracy expressed in ppb. A perfect clock returns 0.

Name

clk_set_phase — adjust the phase shift of a clock signal

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_phase (struct clk * clk, int degrees);
```

Arguments

clk clock signal source

degrees number of degrees the signal is shifted

Description

Shifts the phase of a clock signal by the specified degrees. Returns 0 on success, -EERROR otherwise.

Name

clk_get_phase — return the phase shift of a clock signal

Synopsis

```
int clk_get_phase (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock signal source

Description

Returns the phase shift of a clock node in degrees, otherwise returns -EERROR.

Name

clk_is_match — check if two clk's point to the same hardware clock

Synopsis

```
bool clk_is_match (const struct clk * p, const struct clk * q);
```

Arguments

p clk compared against q

q clk compared against p

Description

Returns true if the two struct clk pointers both point to the same hardware clock node. Put differently, returns true if struct clk *p and struct clk *q share the same struct clk_core object.

Returns false otherwise. Note that two NULL clks are treated as matching.

Name

clk_prepare — prepare a clock source

Synopsis

```
int clk_prepare (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

This prepares the clock source for use.

Must not be called from within atomic context.

Name

clk_unprepare — undo preparation of a clock source

Synopsis

```
void clk_unprepare (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

This undoes a previously prepared clock. The caller must balance the number of prepare and unprepare calls.

Must not be called from within atomic context.

Name

clk_get — lookup and obtain a reference to a clock producer.

Synopsis

```
struct clk * clk_get (struct device * dev, const char * id);
```

Arguments

dev device for clock “consumer”

id clock consumer ID

Description

Returns a struct clk corresponding to the clock producer, or valid IS_ERR condition containing errno. The implementation uses *dev* and *id* to determine the clock consumer, and thereby the clock producer. (IOW, *id* may be identical strings, but clk_get may return different clock producers depending on *dev*.)

Drivers must assume that the clock source is not enabled.

clk_get should not be called from within interrupt context.

Name

devm_clk_get — lookup and obtain a managed reference to a clock producer.

Synopsis

```
struct clk * devm_clk_get (struct device * dev, const char * id);
```

Arguments

dev device for clock “consumer”

id clock consumer ID

Description

Returns a struct clk corresponding to the clock producer, or valid IS_ERR condition containing errno. The implementation uses *dev* and *id* to determine the clock consumer, and thereby the clock producer. (IOW, *id* may be identical strings, but clk_get may return different clock producers depending on *dev*.)

Drivers must assume that the clock source is not enabled.

devm_clk_get should not be called from within interrupt context.

The clock will automatically be freed when the device is unbound from the bus.

Name

clk_enable — inform the system when the clock source should be running.

Synopsis

```
int clk_enable (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

If the clock can not be enabled/disabled, this should return success.

May be called from atomic contexts.

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_disable — inform the system when the clock source is no longer required.

Synopsis

```
void clk_disable (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

Inform the system that a clock source is no longer required by a driver and may be shut down.

May be called from atomic contexts.

Implementation detail

if the clock source is shared between multiple drivers, `clk_enable` calls must be balanced by the same number of `clk_disable` calls for the clock source to be disabled.

Name

clk_get_rate — obtain the current clock rate (in Hz) for a clock source. This is only valid once the clock source has been enabled.

Synopsis

```
unsigned long clk_get_rate (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Name

clk_put — "free" the clock source

Synopsis

```
void clk_put (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Note

drivers must ensure that all clk_enable calls made on this clock source are balanced by clk_disable calls prior to calling this function.

clk_put should not be called from within interrupt context.

Name

devm_clk_put — "free" a managed clock source

Synopsis

```
void devm_clk_put (struct device * dev, struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

dev device used to acquire the clock

clk clock source acquired with devm_clk_get

Note

drivers must ensure that all clk_enable calls made on this clock source are balanced by clk_disable calls prior to calling this function.

clk_put should not be called from within interrupt context.

Name

clk_round_rate — adjust a rate to the exact rate a clock can provide

Synopsis

```
long clk_round_rate (struct clk * clk, unsigned long rate);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

rate desired clock rate in Hz

Description

This answers the question “if I were to pass *rate* to clk_set_rate, what clock rate would I end up with?” without changing the hardware in any way. In other words:

rate = clk_round_rate(clk, r);

and

clk_set_rate(clk, r); rate = clk_get_rate(clk);

are equivalent except the former does not modify the clock hardware in any way.

Returns rounded clock rate in Hz, or negative errno.

Name

clk_set_rate — set the clock rate for a clock source

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_rate (struct clk * clk, unsigned long rate);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

rate desired clock rate in Hz

Description

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_has_parent — check if a clock is a possible parent for another

Synopsis

```
bool clk_has_parent (struct clk * clk, struct clk * parent);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

parent parent clock source

Description

This function can be used in drivers that need to check that a clock can be the parent of another without actually changing the parent.

Returns true if *parent* is a possible parent for *clk*, false otherwise.

Name

clk_set_rate_range — set a rate range for a clock source

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_rate_range (struct clk * clk, unsigned long min, unsigned long max);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

min desired minimum clock rate in Hz, inclusive

max desired maximum clock rate in Hz, inclusive

Description

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_set_min_rate — set a minimum clock rate for a clock source

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_min_rate (struct clk * clk, unsigned long rate);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

rate desired minimum clock rate in Hz, inclusive

Description

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_set_max_rate — set a maximum clock rate for a clock source

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_max_rate (struct clk * clk, unsigned long rate);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

rate desired maximum clock rate in Hz, inclusive

Description

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_set_parent — set the parent clock source for this clock

Synopsis

```
int clk_set_parent (struct clk * clk, struct clk * parent);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

parent parent clock source

Description

Returns success (0) or negative errno.

Name

clk_get_parent — get the parent clock source for this clock

Synopsis

```
struct clk * clk_get_parent (struct clk * clk);
```

Arguments

clk clock source

Description

Returns struct clk corresponding to parent clock source, or valid IS_ERR condition containing errno.

Name

clk_get_sys — get a clock based upon the device name

Synopsis

```
struct clk * clk_get_sys (const char * dev_id, const char * con_id);
```

Arguments

dev_id device name

con_id connection ID

Description

Returns a struct clk corresponding to the clock producer, or valid IS_ERR condition containing errno. The implementation uses *dev_id* and *con_id* to determine the clock consumer, and thereby the clock producer. In contrast to clk_get this function takes the device name instead of the device itself for identification.

Drivers must assume that the clock source is not enabled.

clk_get_sys should not be called from within interrupt context.